OXFORD

oxford exam support

with Teacher's Resource Disk

Third Edition

Solutions

Upper-Intermediate

Teacher's Book

irlanguage

Helen Halliwell

Katherine Stannett Jeremy Bowell

Tim Falla Paul A Davies

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

OXFORD

Contents

Introduction to *Solutions Third Edition*		2
Unit I	Introduction	3
Unit 1	Fame	5
Unit 2	Problems	10
Unit 3	Customs and culture	15
Unit 4	Holidays and tourism	21
Unit 5	Relationships	27
Unit 6	Health	32
Unit 7	Tall stories	37
Unit 8	Change the world	44
Unit 9	Consumerism	49
Culture Bank		55
Workbook answer keys and transcripts		61

Third Edition
Solutions
Upper-Intermediate
Essentials Teacher's Book

این مجموعه با لوگوی مرجع زبان ایرانیان
به صورت نشر بر خط و حامل به ثبت رسیده است.
کپی بر داری از آن خلاف شرع، قانون و اخلاق است و شامل پیگیرد خواهد شد.

Introduction to *Solutions Third Edition*

A note from the authors

Welcome to *Solutions Third Edition*. Teachers' responses to *Solutions* and *Solutions Second Edition* have been overwhelmingly positive. *Solutions Third Edition* has evolved, based on teacher feedback, whilst retaining the key features that teachers value in the *Solutions* series:

- engaging topics and texts
- a strong focus on exam topics and tasks
- a clear structure, with easy-to-follow lessons that always have an achievable outcome
- a familiar teaching and learning approach with plenty of extra practice material
- a guided and supported approach to speaking and writing

In the course of extensive research carried out for the new edition, we spoke to scores of teachers and asked them how we could improve the course.

In response to their requests, we have:

- provided 100% new content
- included a Listening lesson in every unit which will develop your students' listening skills
- included a Word Skills lesson in every unit which explores the grammar of key vocabulary and includes dictionary-based exercises
- addressed mixed ability, with extra support for all levels and suggested extension activities in the Teacher's Guide
- increased the amount of language recycling and included a *Recycle!* activity to consolidate grammar students have studied earlier in the course
- provided added flexibility with a bank of Culture lessons with supporting DVD documentary clips at the back of the Student's Book and extra activities on the Classroom Presentation Tool

Solutions Third Edition has benefited from collaboration with teachers with extensive experience of teaching and preparing students for exams. We would like to thank Helen Halliwell for sharing her expertise in writing the procedural notes in the Teacher's Guide.

We are confident that the result is a forward-thinking and modern course that will prepare your students for the future and provide you with all the support that you need. We hope that you and your students enjoy using it!

Tim Falla and Paul A Davies

The components of the course

- Student's Book
- Workbook with audio available online
- Student's Book and Workbook e-Books
- Teacher's Pack
  - Essentials Teacher's Book: answer keys and audio scripts for both the Student's Book and the Workbook
  - Teacher's Resource Disk: full teaching notes, photocopiable worksheets, DVD worksheets, Twenty-first century skills projects, Course Test audio
  - Workbook Audio
- Class Audio CDs
- Course Tests
- Course DVD
- Classroom Presentation Tool
- Student's and Teacher's Websites (www.oup.com/elt/teacher/solutions)

Solutions Third Edition – new features

New for the Student's Book

- New *Listening* lesson – with a focus on sub-skills to develop students' listening skills. Lessons include strategies, exam-like practice and speaking activities.
- New *Word Skills* lesson – students learn the grammar of key vocabulary in context, including word building and phrasal verbs. Students also develop their dictionary skills.
- New *Culture Bank* – nine Culture lessons linked to the topic and language of the main units. These ready-to-use lessons can be used at any point in the course, giving teachers the flexibility to choose when to use them.

New for the Workbook

- More listening practice.
- Five *Exam Skills Trainers* providing further practice of typical exam tasks.
- Nine *Unit Reviews* to encourage students to reflect on their progress.
- Five *Cumulative Reviews* for Units I–1, I–3, I–5, I–7 and I–9.

New for the Classroom Presentation Tool

- Optional lesson openers – additional lead-in activities to motivate students and recycle language.
- Optional lesson closers – quiz-style round-up activities to consolidate what students have learned in the lesson.
- Optional task support – for example, useful language or extra ideas to help students complete classroom tasks.

I Introduction

Map of resources

IA Vocabulary
Student's Book, page 4; Workbook, page 4

IB Grammar
Student's Book, page 5; Workbook, page 5

IC Vocabulary
Student's Book, page 6; Workbook, page 6
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review

ID Grammar
Student's Book, page 7; Workbook, page 7
Photocopiable: Grammar Review

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit I

End of unit
Short Tests: Unit I

IA Vocabulary

Friends

Exercise 2 page 4
1 verb + *-ing* form: spend time (listening); mind (putting up with)
2 verb + infinitive: hope (to be); decide (not to do); choose (to be)
3 verb + object + infinitive: advise (me to do)
4 verb + object + preposition + *-ing* form: warn (me against doing)
5 verb + preposition + *-ing* form: apologise (for being)

Exercise 3 page 4
1 copying 2 to study 3 visiting 4 to go
5 to apply 6 volunteering

Exercise 4 page 4
1 verb + *-ing* form: deny, keep, mention, propose
2 verb + infinitive: afford, manage, offer, promise, propose
3 verb + object + infinitive: beg, persuade, remind, tell
4 verb + object + preposition + *-ing* form: accuse (of), blame (for), thank (for)
5 verb + preposition + *-ing* form: end up, insist on, think (of / about), wonder about

The verbs from exercise 3 are as follows:
1 verb + *-ing* form: admit, enjoy
2 verb + infinitive: agree, hope
3 verb + object + infinitive: encourage
4 verb + object + preposition + *-ing* form: praise
5 verb + preposition + *-ing* form: admit

Exercise 5 page 4
1 thinking 2 asked 3 reminded 4 insisted
5 accused / accusing 6 apologise

Exercise 6 page 4
anger – angry; anxiety – anxious; shame – ashamed

For further practice of word families: Vocabulary Builder IA page 117
1 ease, easily, hopeful / hopeless, hope, hopefully / hopelessly, laziness, laze, lazily, beautiful, beautify, beautifully, creation, creative, creatively, pleasure, pleasant, pleasantly, sadness, sadden, sadly, surprising, surprise, surprisingly, annoying, annoy, annoyingly
2 1 laziness 2 surprising 3 beautifully 4 annoyingly 5 creatively 6 saddened 7 ease 8 pleasant 9 hopefully

Exercise 8 page 4
1 continue, like, prefer, start
2 forget, go on, remember, stop, try

Exercise 9 page 4
1 to go / going 2 to tell 3 to laugh 4 to talk
5 to play / playing 6 to rain / raining

IB Grammar

Present and future tenses

Exercise 2 1.02 page 5
He always talks about himself.

Transcript
See Student's Book page 5.

Exercise 3 page 5
a he never takes an interest in other people b That's the personality he's got. c Our first lesson tomorrow is English. d Next time you see him e his attitude is really putting me off him f He's always talking about his life g I'm playing football this evening

Exercise 4 page 5
a he never asks b he doesn't care about anyone else; it annoys you; it irritates me; I don't see e what I'm doing

Exercise 5 page 5
1 text 2 are always using / always use 3 go out
4 am using 5 am revising 6 start / are starting
7 are trying 8 helps

For further practice of the present simple and continuous: Grammar Builder I.1 page 122
1 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a / b 6 b 7 a

Exercise 6 page 5
a going to b will c going to d will e will
Are you going to do anything about it? – c; I'll tell him if you want – e; I'll speak to him then. – d; he won't get angry – b; it looks like it's going to rain – a

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

For further practice of *will* and *going to*: Grammar Builder I.2 page 122

1 1 'll see 2 'm going to meet 3 's going to crash 4 'll give 5 'll be 6 Are you going to see 7 going to fall 8 'll have 9 won't forget 10 'll do

Exercise 7 page 5

1 present simple (habits and routines) / present continuous with *always* (describing annoying behaviour) 2 present simple (habits and routines) 3 present continuous (future arrangements) / *going to* (when we have already decided what to do) 4 *will* (based on what we know or just a guess) 5 *going to* (when we have already decided what to do) / present continuous (future arrangements)

IC Vocabulary

Life events

Exercise 2 1.03 page 6

1 be an infant 2 be a centenarian 3 be in your teens 4 be a toddler 5 be elderly 6 be an adult 7 be middle-aged

Transcript

1 She's started to eat solid food, but she hasn't learned to walk yet.
2 My great-grandma turned 100 just last week. Isn't that amazing!
3 My younger brother wants to study medicine at university, but he'll need to get really high marks in his exams this summer to get a place.
4 She's at a lovely age – really curious about the world – but you have to keep a close eye on her. She has very little sense of danger.
5 Even though she has some health problems, my mum is still very active. She does voluntary work three days a week in a charity shop and has just joined a hiking group. She says she won't let old age slow her down!
6 It's not like when I was a student. I've got so much more responsibility now. My job's really demanding, and I have to pay for my apartment too.
7 The children left home last year, and it's a bit quiet around the house now. We'll have to start going out more often, like we did in our twenties!

Exercise 4 page 6

1 with 2 about 3 at 4 to 5 to 6 with / about 7 by / at 8 of

For further practice of adjective + preposition: Vocabulary Builder IC page 117

3 1 with 2 of 3 about 4 to 5 from 6 on 7 at 8 by

Exercise 6 page 6

1 born 2 fall 3 get 4 have 5 learn 6 leave 7 pass 8 settle 9 start 10 become

Exercise 7 page 6

1 born, moved, grew 2 left, job, go, career 3 fell, engaged, got 4 grandparent, retire, a business 5 buy, inherited, passed away 6 emigrated, settled, started 7 split, divorced, brought up 8 left, started school, to drive

Exercise 8 page 6

1 born 2 emigrated 3 left 4 been 5 job 6 fell 7 got 8 married 9 moved 10 settled 11 family 12 brought 13 became

ID Grammar

Past tenses

Exercise 2 page 7

a sentence 1 b sentence 4 c sentence 3 d sentence 5

Exercise 3 page 7

1 learned, was studying 2 was snowing, were driving 3 grew, moved 4 got, had left 5 emigrated, started, was living 6 met, hadn't seen

For further practice of past tenses: Grammar Builder I.3 page 122

1 1 was shining, were singing, left 2 saw, realised 3 were (you) doing, called 4 were waiting, started 5 walked, sat down, started 6 was living, moved 7 played, was living 8 was leaving, came out

2 1 hadn't been 2 had always kept 3 hadn't told 4 had been 5 Had (you ever) visited 6 had got up 7 had known

Exercise 4 page 7

a sentence 8 b sentence 7 c sentence 9 d sentence 6 e sentence 2

Exercise 5 page 7

1 been reading, finished 2 been jogging 3 married 4 been raining 5 bought 6 been studying

For further practice of the present perfect simple and continuous: Grammar Builder I.4 page 123

1 1 've been searching, haven't found 2 've visited, 've never seen 3 Have you seen, 've been looking 4 've just been talking 5 been eating 6 Have you seen, 's been working 7 've played 8 've been watching 9 have won 10 Have, taken

For further practice of stative verbs: Grammar Builder I.5 page 124

1 1 're behaving, don't understand, mean 2 are you laughing, doesn't fit 3 'm carrying, know, contains 4 Do you like, doesn't matter, don't mind 5 need, don't care, 'm enjoying

2 1 was looking 2 had 3 'm seeing 4 was thinking 5 were having 6 think 7 see 8 looks

Exercise 6 page 7

1 've (just) received 2 haven't seen 3 got 4 went 5 was 6 hadn't been 7 have been 8 have been living 9 has been working 10 has offered 11 learned 12 was living

1 Fame

Map of resources

1A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 8–9; Workbook, page 8
Photocopiable: 1A (What are they like?)

1B Grammar
Student's Book, page 10; Workbook, page 9
Photocopiable: 1B (Past perfect simple and past perfect continuous)

1C Listening
Student's Book, page 11; Workbook, page 10

1D Grammar
Student's Book, page 12; Workbook, page 11
Photocopiable: 1D (*used to* and *would*)

1E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 13; Workbook, page 12

1F Reading
Student's Book, pages 14–15; Workbook, page 13

1G Speaking
Student's Book, page 16; Workbook, page 14

1H Writing
Student's Book, page 17; Workbook, page 15

Culture 1
Student's Book, page 108
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 1

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 1

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 16–17
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review
Exam Skills Trainer 1: Student's Book, pages 18–19
Cumulative Review I–1: Workbook, pages 108–109
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 1

1A Vocabulary

What are they like?

Exercise 1 page 8

A Alicia Keys; singer / songwriter / record producer / actress; (Possible answer) She sang *We are Here*.
B J.K. Rowling; author; (Possible answer) She wrote the Harry Potter books.
C Angela Merkel; politician; (Possible answer) She is the Chancellor of Germany.
D Lionel Messi; footballer; (Possible answer) He scored the most goals in one year.
E Keira Knightley; actress; (Possible answer) She appeared in the film *Pirates of the Caribbean*.
F Mark Zuckerberg; computer programmer; (Possible answer) He founded Facebook, the social networking site.

Exercise 3 page 8

tigers spontaneous, vain oxen cautious, stubborn
rats passionate, gullible pigs selfless, stingy
dogs sociable, sympathetic roosters industrious, bossy
monkeys eccentric, untrustworthy sheep considerate, insecure horses outgoing, bad-tempered
snakes shrewd, cruel dragons intelligent, judgemental
rabbits creative, self-satisfied

Exercise 4 page 8

Alicia Keys – rooster; J.K. Rowling – snake; Angela Merkel – horse; Lionel Messi – rabbit; Keira Knightley – ox; Mark Zuckerberg – rat

Exercise 7 page 9

1 self-confident 2 single-minded 3 thick-skinned
4 easy-going 5 well-behaved 6 quick-witted
7 light-hearted 8 bad-mannered 9 open-minded
10 hard-working

Exercise 8 1.04 page 9

Speaker 1 He has had experience working as a stand-up comedian. You need to be thick-skinned, single-minded and hard-working.
Speaker 2 She has travelled alone and made a lot of friends all around the world. You need to be self-confident, open-minded and easy-going.
Speaker 3 His brother has worked as a DJ. You need to be quick-witted.

Transcript

1 I've performed all over Britain in clubs as a stand-up comedian, and it can be hard work. I did a show in Liverpool last Saturday and the audience let me know that they didn't think I was very funny! When a show goes badly like that, you need to be thick-skinned because people can say some quite hurtful things. Fortunately, I'm quite single-minded and I won't let one bad show stop me. I've also had very successful nights, and I know that as long as I continue to be hard-working, I'll eventually do well.
2 I've always enjoyed travelling on my own because it gives me the opportunity to be a real traveller, rather than a tourist. I've made lots of friends all around the world that I wouldn't have made if I always travelled with a group of people. Of course, you need to be quite self-confident to travel alone. And it helps to be open-minded – on one of my trips, I was invited to a meal with a family, and cooked insects were on the menu! I didn't want to seem bad-mannered, so I ate them. You also need to be easy-going when you're travelling on your own and realise that things won't always go the way you plan them. Actually, it's the unexpected events that make trips more interesting anyway!

3 My brother Sean has worked as a DJ for a long time, and he does weddings and other social events. He always tells me that being a DJ is a lot more than just playing records. A DJ needs to be quick-witted and able to deal with difficult situations such as when guests are not well behaved. Two weeks ago, an argument started at a wedding between the bride and groom's fathers, so my brother played a disco classic and in two minutes they were dancing together, and suddenly the atmosphere was much more light-hearted! Sean has had to deal with quite a few situations like that, but fortunately the majority of people just want a good time.

Exercise 9 1.04 page 9

1 has given 2 didn't have 3 has made 4 tasted
5 didn't find 6 has had

Transcript

See exercise 8.

1B Grammar

Past perfect simple and past perfect continuous

Exercise 1 page 10

(Possible answer)
A stunt double is a person who looks like an actor and who performs dangerous stunts (dangerous and difficult actions that somebody does to entertain people, especially as part of a film) instead of the actor in a film. An actor does not usually perform dangerous stunts because they might get hurt, whereas the stunt double is trained to do such stunts.

Exercise 2 page 10

a he'd spent; His maths had never been good enough; he had won; had received
b he had been learning
c Paul had (always) wanted
d He hadn't been doing

For further practice of the past perfect simple and continuous: Grammar Builder 1.1: page 125

1 1 had been trying 2 had finished 3 had known
4 he'd been playing 5 had liked 6 were watching

2 1 had been sleeping 2 hadn't eaten
3 had been waiting 4 had been learning
5 had thought 6 had had 7 had put up

Exercise 3 page 10

1 had finished – a 2 had been planning – d
3 hadn't been waiting – b 4 had been queuing – d
5 had known – c 6 hadn't been wearing – b
7 had been trying – d 8 had won – a

Exercise 4 page 10

1 had been acting for years 2 hadn't visited the USA
3 had been watching television 4 had wanted to see
5 hadn't managed to buy 6 hadn't been working for
7 Had you left university

1C Listening

Press intrusion

Exercise 3 page 11

Six: paparazzi, be in the public eye, invade someone's privacy, celebrities, press regulators, privacy laws

For further practice of adjectives with positive and negative meanings: Vocabulary Builder 1C: page 117

1 **Positive** self-assured, shrewd, courageous, enthusiastic, reserved, thrifty
Negative arrogant, calculating, foolhardy, pushy, antisocial, stingy

2 1 stingy 2 enthusiastic 3 foolhardy
4 shrewd 5 antisocial

Exercise 4 1.05 page 11

1 packed 2 spied on 3 determined
4 generous 5 gossip

Transcript

1 **Man** Did you have a good night at the film premiere? Did you see any of the stars?
Woman It was OK, but the place was absolutely packed with media people.
2 **Girl 1** What are you looking at?
Girl 2 This photo – it's of the lead singer of that band, The Wanted, on the balcony of his house.
Girl 1 How do they get such close-up photos like that? I bet he had no idea he was being spied on.
3 **Boy 1** Did you see that actor on that chat show last night with a broken arm and a black eye?
Boy 2 Yeah, I did. He's really determined and insists on doing his own stunts, instead of using a stunt double.
4 **Boy** Look at what it says here about that new Manchester United footballer. He's just bought four houses! One for his parents, one for his brother, one for his sister and one for himself.
Girl Must've cost him a fortune, but it's very generous of him.
5 **Girl 1** Have you ever watched that reality TV show about a group of young people living in Essex?
Girl 2 Yes, I have. But all they do is gossip about each other.

Exercise 5 1.05 page 11

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 c 5 a

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 6 1.06 page 11

Speaker 1 B Speaker 2 C Speaker 3 A Speaker 4 E

Transcript

1 I think paparazzi drones should be banned. They completely disregard people's right to privacy. It's bad enough that the paparazzi have zoom lenses and sit in trees and take secret photos. But sending flying cameras down the street after celebrities, or over walls into their gardens and through their windows – I think that's horrible, and cruel to the people they are harassing. The tabloid press say that they are operating 'in the public interest', but that's just an excuse for stalking people for money.

2 Well, I'm not in favour of invading someone's privacy, of course, but I'm also not in favour of banning drones without thinking about it properly just because famous people don't like it. There's quite a lot of media regulation already, and we need a free press. I agree that famous people shouldn't be stalked or harassed, but surely drones are useful for researching other news stories in investigative journalism? In the US state of California, the police have now been given the right to use drones without needing to ask for permission first. So what's the difference, and who's going to regulate it?

3 I don't have any compassion for people who spend their whole lives looking for fame and publicity, but then want it only when it suits them. Famous people need the public to recognise them. That's the definition of fame! And so many vain and self-satisfied celebrities use mass media to portray only the image that they want the public to see – but that's false, an illusion. Why shouldn't we see famous people as they really are? I think journalists have the right to hunt out lies, hypocrisy and scandal wherever they find it.

4 I think the topic of press regulation is a difficult one. I essentially believe in a free press and serious investigative journalism – I think they are so important in a democratic country. But I think there's too much pressure to produce 'news' these days. Journalists have to always be on the hunt for the next big story, and so it sometimes seems that a lot of stories are just made up. Newspapers – especially the tabloids – just print rubbish about famous people. I'm not surprised that celebrities get fed up with it and sue them for libel.

1D Grammar

used to and *would*

Exercise 1 page 12

(Possible answer)
He is extremely intelligent and he did unusual things at a very young age.

Exercise 2 page 12

He didn't use to play; he used to read a lot; And what did he use to read … ?; He … would read everything

For further practice of *used to* and *would*: Grammar Builder 1.2: page 125

1 1 used to live 2 used to forget / would forget 3 used to enjoy 4 used to want 5 used to go / would go 6 used to play / would play 7 used to have 8 didn't use to own

Exercise 3 page 12

1 used to work 2 used to go / would go
3 used to have 4 Did / Didn't she use to wear
5 used to follow / would follow
6 never used to accept / would never accept

Exercise 4 page 12

1 correct 2 used to own 3 correct 4 enjoyed
5 lasted 6 used to be 7 correct

Exercise 5 page 12

1 used to want to 2 did you use to have 3 didn't use to 4 he would do 5 Didn't she use to 6 would let

1E Word Skills

Position and order of adjectives

Exercise 2 page 13

Before a noun talented young (actress); selfless (charity work); huge (movie fan); baggy white (trousers); silver (shoes); self-satisfied (celebrities); huge modern (homes); young (children)
After a linking verb (she's) great; (looks) stunning; (she's) Amazing!; (get really) annoyed

Exercise 3 page 13

young – age; talented – opinion; selfless – opinion; huge – size; baggy – size; white – colour; silver – colour; self-satisfied – opinion; huge – size; modern – age; young – age

Exercise 4 page 13

1 vain young Portuguese 2 long white Japanese
3 ridiculous massive red 4 1960s black Italian
5 ugly modern

Exercise 5 page 13

afraid – frightened; alive – live; alone – lonely; angry – annoyed; asleep – sleeping; glad – happy

Exercise 6 page 13

a angry, frightened, happy, living, lonely, sleeping
b afraid, alive, alone, annoyed, asleep, glad

For further practice of position and order of adjectives: Grammar Builder 1.3 page 125

1 1 tasty Spanish 2 scary big black
3 funny new Mexican 4 huge silver
5 tiny young 6 new red French

2 1 a lonely 2 sleeping 3 angry 4 living
5 happy 6 frightened

Exercise 7 page 13

1 happy 2 disappointed / upset, sleeping 3 French
4 grey 5 lonely 6 angry, live 7 silver, Russian

1F Reading

Vloggers

Exercise 2 page 14

1 B 2 C 3 E

Exercise 3 page 14

1 b – The options a, c and d are wrong for the following reasons:
a David Beckham had been at the store a few weeks earlier. He was not the reason there was a large police presence at the bookstore.
c The person at the store was a vlogger, not a pop sensation.
d The police were at the bookstore because so many people wanted to see the vlogger. A few weeks earlier seven hundred people had wanted David Beckham to sign their copy of his autobiography.

Exercise 4 page 14
2 a 3 d 4 c 5 b

Exercise 5 page 14
1 F He attracted many more fans. 2 T 3 T 4 T
5 F Most of Zoella's fans forgave her, but many media experts saw her book controversy as a sign that the media corporations were taking control of vloggers.

Exercise 6 page 15
1 providers 2 platform 3 accessibility 4 channel
5 content 6 subscribers 7 feedback 8 interaction

1G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 2 page 16
Positive delighted, ecstatic, fascinated, hilarious, thrilled, wonderful
Negative awful, exhausted, miserable, starving, terrible, terrified

Exercise 3 page 16
absolutely, totally

For further practice of gradable and extreme adjectives: Vocabulary Builder 1G: page 117
3 1 clean 2 terrible 3 starving 4 small
5 scary / terrible 6 cold

Exercise 4 1.08 page 16
1 really glamorous, absolutely wonderful, totally fascinated, thrilled
2 the advantages

Transcript
In both photos, you can see a crowd of people surrounding some celebrities. The main difference is that we can't see the celebrities in the first photo because they're inside a car. There are other differences too. In the first photo, the people taking photos are probably fans, whereas in the second photo, they look like professional photographers. And unlike the first photo, the second photo shows an event of some kind – perhaps an awards ceremony. In fact, overall, the second photo is a much more positive image of celebrity than the first photo.
I think one of the main advantages of being famous would be getting invited to really glamorous events like the one in the second photo. It must be absolutely wonderful to go to a Hollywood party. Another advantage of being famous would be that people always listen to your views. If there's an issue that you feel strongly about and you want to speak out, your opinions are always reported in the magazines and online because journalists are totally fascinated by what celebrities think. You can use this power to give publicity to good causes and to make a real difference in the world. Of course, there are also disadvantages to being a celebrity. For example, it can be difficult to have a private life. But personally, I would be thrilled to have the kind of opportunities that celebrities have.

Exercise 5 1.08 page 16
In both photos, you can see …
The main difference is …
In the first photo (the people taking photos are probably fans), whereas in the second photo …
And unlike the first photo, the second photo shows …
In fact, overall, the second photo is (a much more positive image of celebrity) than the first photo.

Transcript
See exercise 4.

1H Writing

A formal letter

Exercise 2 page 17
Paragraph 1 a proposal **Paragraph 2** a description
Paragraph 3 some suggestions

Exercise 3 page 17
a I would like to suggest that we
b put forward my proposal
c is due to take place
d overcome many obstacles
e achieve his goals
f My suggestions are as follows
g made rapid progress
h suffered
i would be of the same opinion

Exercise 4 page 17
1 I am writing to offer my suggestions for the school leavers' speech. 2 I would like to recommend that you invite our MP to make a speech. 3 These are my reasons for inviting her. 4 In my view, her career is an inspiring one. 5 Furthermore, she has also contributed a great deal to charity. 6 I have no doubt that we would benefit from hearing her views. 7 I would be grateful if you would consider my suggestions. 8 I look forward to hearing from you at your earliest convenience.

1 Exam Skills Trainer

Exercise 1 page 18
(Possible answers)
1 **art form** entertainment; **enjoyed** that is popular; **large numbers of ordinary people** the masses
2 **awarded a prize** given something special
3 **prevent a play from happening** stop a performance
4 **took advantage of** made money from / benefited from

Exercise 2 page 18
1 B 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 A 6 C

Exercise 3 page 18
A exchange (In the extract, the speaker wants to exchange a few words, but exchanged in option A is in the past tense.)
C conversation (In the extract, Lewis Collins had a conversation with someone else, but in option C, the celebrity and the speaker have a conversation).

Exercise 4 1.09 page 18

1 B 2 A 3 A

Transcript

1 **Philip** That went well, didn't it?
Sandra Yes, I think you could say it was a complete success!
Philip Everyone seemed to be really enjoying themselves – the crowd went wild towards the end!
Sandra Yeah. The band looked as if they were having fun too. They were grinning the whole time.
Philip That's because they knew it was all for a good cause.
Sandra Absolutely. There were loads of people, weren't there? Far more than we expected.
Philip Well, human rights is such an important issue to a lot of people. So, how much do you think we made?
Sandra I don't know. The concert was sold out, but there are still a few things to deduct from the ticket sales.
Philip The band played for free though, didn't they?
Sandra That's right. We couldn't have done it without them.

2 **Newsreader** Tales of extraordinary bravery are emerging from Nepal after the country was hit by an earthquake measuring 7.8 on the Richter scale. The quake caused an avalanche on Everest which swept climbers away and flattened part of the camp at the base of the mountain. The avalanche caught medics by surprise, and one of them, 34-year-old Rachel Tullet, was swept onto a rock, injuring her leg. Despite the pain, Dr Tullet leapt into action and succeeded in keeping 23 critically-injured patients alive until they could be evacuated to hospital by helicopter. What she didn't tell anyone was that she had a gaping wound in her own leg at the time. Later, she stitched up the wound herself – without an anaesthetic. Dr Tullet is currently recovering at her home in New Zealand, but is planning to return to Nepal in a fortnight.

3 **Interviewer** Today, I'm talking to David Wilson from the Institute of Psychology. David, could you tell us just what it is that makes people want to be famous?
David Wilson In my view, most people want fame for attention and money these days – you need only look at reality shows like *Big Brother* or *Pop Idol* to see what I mean. The problem is that this kind of fame can be very short-lived. Let's take the group Hear'Say, as an example. Now, Hear'Say were the winners of the ITV1 show *Popstars*. Their first single sold 1.2 million copies and their debut album more than a million. But sales started to slow after their second number one single, and the band split up less than two years after first entering the limelight. Personally, I think it takes genuine talent rather than a desire to be rich to stay at the top.

Exercise 5 page 19

1 noun 2 noun 3 noun 4 adverb 5 noun
6 noun 7 adjective 8 adverb

Exercise 6 page 19

1 strangers 2 resemblance 3 similarities
4 especially 5 awareness 6 privacy 7 displeasing
8 affectionately

Exercise 7 page 19

Topic b

Exercise 9 page 19

To complain about a magazine article.

2 Problems

Map of resources

2A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 20–21; Workbook, page 18
Photocopiable: 2A (It drives me crazy!)

2B Grammar
Student's Book, page 22; Workbook, page 19
Photocopiable: 2B (Comparison)

2C Listening
Student's Book, page 23; Workbook, page 20

2D Grammar
Student's Book, page 24; Workbook, page 21
Photocopiable: 2D (Infinitives and *-ing* forms)

2E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 25; Workbook, page 22

2F Reading
Student's Book, pages 26–27; Workbook, page 23

2G Speaking
Student's Book, page 28; Workbook, page 24
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Being diplomatic)

2H Writing
Student's Book, page 29; Workbook, page 25

Culture 2
Student's Book, page 109
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 2

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 2

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 26–27
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 1: Workbook, pages 28–29
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 2

2A Vocabulary

It drives me crazy!

Exercise 2 page 20

(Possible answers)
Photo A anxious, frustrated, miserable, stressed
Photo B boy: content, thrilled, upbeat;
girl: bitter, disappointed, envious
Photo C frustrated, irritated

Exercise 3 page 20

Positive amused, content, thrilled, upbeat
Negative alarmed, anxious, ashamed, bitter, disappointed, disillusioned, envious, exasperated, frustrated, furious, humiliated, indecisive, irritated, miserable, stressed
Both hysterical, stunned

Exercise 4 page 20

(Possible answers)
1 alarmed, anxious, indecisive
2 content, thrilled, upbeat
3 exasperated, furious, irritated
4 bitter, furious, humiliated
5 anxious, stressed
6 hysterical, miserable, stunned
7 disappointed, disillusioned, frustrated
8 ashamed, humiliated, miserable

Exercise 5 page 20

2 miserable 3 furious 4 anxious / stressed
5 irritated 6 envious 7 humiliated
8 anxious / exasperated / frustrated 9 indecisive

Exercise 7 1.10 page 21

1 People who are always updating their status on social networking sites. Emotional messages about how somebody is missing their boyfriend or girlfriend terribly and how miserable they feel.
2 People who are constantly eating popcorn in the cinema.
3 Because they got a new laptop for Christmas.
4 Taking part in more online forums.

Transcript

Speaker 1 Well, I don't suppose it's very important, but something that I find really irritating is when people are always updating their status on social networking sites! I'm really not interested in hearing how thrilled someone is with their new shoes, or how they feel about going to the coolest pizzeria in town. But what really gets on my nerves are the emotional messages that appear every five minutes about how somebody is missing their boyfriend or girlfriend terribly and how miserable they feel! What's more, they've usually only been going out with each other for about a week!

Speaker 2 I get really mad when I go to the cinema and people are constantly eating popcorn. I really blow my top – I don't just sit there feeling angry: I tell people to keep quiet! My boyfriend says that one day someone is going to react in a hostile way, but for the moment nobody has said anything – but they haven't stopped eating popcorn either! They eat more quietly for a while, but gradually it starts getting louder and louder. And for one week at the end of this month, my local cinema is offering free snacks with every film, so it's only going to get worse!

Speaker 3 I was over the moon when I got a new laptop for Christmas, but since I've had it, I've had nothing but problems. The first day, it took ages to start up, but I just thought it was because I had transferred all my documents to it the night before, but every time I switch it on, it works more and more slowly. It's so slow that I feel like tearing my hair out! Right now, it's downloading some photos from my mobile, and after thirty minutes it still hasn't transferred half of them! I feel really frustrated every time I use it. I'm taking it back to the shop tomorrow and I hope something can be done about it.

3 Customs and culture

Map of resources

3A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 30–31; Workbook, page 30
Photocopiable: 3A (Express yourself)

3B Grammar
Student's Book, page 32; Workbook, page 31
Photocopiable: 3B (Modals: present and future)

3C Listening
Student's Book, page 33; Workbook, page 32

3D Grammar
Student's Book, page 34; Workbook, page 33
Photocopiable: 3D (Modals in the past)

3E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 35; Workbook, page 34

3F Reading
Student's Book, pages 36–37; Workbook, page 35

3G Speaking
Student's Book, page 38; Workbook, page 36
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Moving onto another topic and paraphrasing)

3H Writing
Student's Book, page 39; Workbook, page 37

Culture 3
Student's Book, page 110
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 3

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 3

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 38–39
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 2: Student's Book, pages 40–41
Cumulative Review I–3: Workbook, pages 110–111
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 3

3A Vocabulary

Express yourself

Exercise 1 page 30
(Possible answers)
A confused B confused C anxious D annoyed
E surprised F happy

Exercise 2 page 30
(Possible answers)
A The woman is shrugging her shoulders and raising her eyebrows. B The man is frowning and scratching his head. C The woman is frowning and biting her fingernails. D The man is frowning. E The woman is raising her eyebrows. F The man is giving a thumbs up.

Exercise 4 1.17 page 30
1 sneeze 2 hiccup 3 sigh 4 sniff 5 cough
6 tut 7 slurp 8 clear your throat 9 gasp 10 snore

Transcript
See answer key.

Exercise 5 page 30
1 clear your throat, cough, sneeze, sniff 2 clear your throat 3 snore 4 sigh 5 gasp 6 tut 7 slurp

Exercise 6 page 31
1 sniff 2 eyebrows 3 cross 4 shake 5 shoulders
6 point 7 slurp 8 thumbs up

Exercise 7 1.18 page 31
1 A 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 A 6 C 7 A

Transcript
1 If you have a cold in Japan, you should sniff rather than blow your nose. If you blow your nose in public, you might disgust a few people, so it's better to go to the bathroom to do it!
2 When a Turk raises their eyebrows, they are doing it to say 'no'. Very often this gesture is accompanied by a tutting sound, so they raise their eyebrows and make this sound – *tut* – at the same time.
3 If you want to wish someone good luck in Vietnam, don't do it by crossing your fingers! It's considered a very rude gesture and could get you into trouble!
4 You might shake your head to say 'no' in your country, but in Bulgaria it's exactly the opposite. Shaking the head means 'yes'!
5 It may seem normal to you, but people in many countries, Indonesia, for example, will think you very rude if you point at people or things.
6 Making a noise when drinking is rude in many countries, but not in Japan. You can slurp whether you are drinking tea or eating a bowl of noodles.
7 Giving the thumbs up in Thailand is something that children do, so it's not offensive, but it's seen as childish. It's a bit like a child sticking out their tongue!

Exercise 8 1.19 page 31
a situation 3 b situation 4 c situation 1 d situation 2

Transcript
1 **Interviewer** So what do you consider to be social taboos?
Passer-by Well, when you want to cough or sneeze, you should turn your head away and cover your mouth. Nobody wants to share your germs! And if you have a cold, take out a handkerchief, stand to one side and blow your nose! I know that sniffing is acceptable in some cultures, but if you're planning to come to Britain, you might annoy people if you constantly sniff!
2 **Tom** Anyway, so how did the school exchange trip to Madrid go?
Leah Fantastic. We had a great time.
Tom What was your host family like?
Leah They looked after me really well and they were very friendly. In fact, at first I thought they were too friendly!
Tom What do you mean?

Leah Well, when they met me at the airport, they all gave me a hug and a kiss on both cheeks! I just stood there blushing!
Tom You'd never see British people doing that with people they don't know!
Leah I know! They also gesture a lot more. The girl I stayed with, Marta, was always shrugging her shoulders or moving her arms around. She spoke with her hands! If she comes to stay with me and my family next month, she'll have the opposite first impression to mine: she'll think we're cold and reserved!

3 Now, we're going to look at how to behave in an interview. Obviously you're going to be nervous, but you really have to make an effort to control your body language. It goes without saying that if you bite your fingernails, you won't make a very good impression. However, there are other types of body language that it is best to avoid too. If you fold your arms, you could look defensive and tense, but on the other hand, don't stretch your legs out in front of you either as you will appear too relaxed! You need to find a balance; sit with your feet flat on the ground and your arms resting on the chair with your hands together in front of you.

4 **Director** Cut ... cut!
Actor What's wrong?
Director It's the expression on your face. It's not right.
Actor How do you mean?
Director Your character is supposed to look confused.
Actor Well, I'm trying to transmit the idea by scratching my head while I'm looking at the menu and then I'll ask about one of the dishes – you know, 'Excuse me, what exactly is in the beef stroganoff?'
Director I know what it says in the script, Marc, but I don't want you to play it like that. I want you to be less obvious. When you scratched your head, it looked like you had a terrible itch! Just raise your eyebrows and put your head to one side and look up at the waitress.
Actor But if I do the scene like that, the audience won't realise that I've got a problem with the menu.
Director That's the point, Marc, that's the point! We don't want it to be obvious at first. You're supposed to be a man who is not very good at expressing his feelings!
Actor OK, OK, whatever you say!
Director Exactly – whatever the director says! OK, everybody, positions please! And ... 3 ... 2 ... 1 ... action!

Exercise 9 1.19 page 31

(Possible answers)
1 might annoy people
2 could think of you as cold and reserved
3 might not get the job
4 won't realise that Marc is supposed to be a man who is not very good at expressing his feelings

Transcript
See exercise 8.

3B Grammar

Modals: present and future

Exercise 3 page 32

1 *should* and *ought to* 2 *must* and *have to* 3 *mustn't*
4 *don't have to, don't need to* and *needn't* 5 *be supposed to*
1 You ought to plan to keep in touch with friends and family
2 you must try to learn some key phrases
3 You mustn't worry if you can't see or do everything
4 You don't have to be fluent
5 so you understand what you're supposed to do (and what you're not supposed to do)

For further information about advice, obligation and necessity: Grammar Builder 3.1 page 129

Exercise 4 page 32

1 should
2 mustn't
3 are supposed to
4 don't have to
5 You're supposed to
6 ought to

Exercise 5 page 32

1 you may find it helps to read about the history and culture; you might love it;
2 you should fit right in
3 there must be one in the language you need
4 you'll be able to find a wide variety of online language courses
5 Travelling can be lonely / You can't learn everything about where you're visiting

Exercise 6 page 32

1 must 2 can't 3 may / might / could 4 be able to
5 can 6 may / might / could

For further practice of possibility, probability and certainty: Grammar Builder 3.2 page 129

1 1 needn't 2 mustn't 3 should 4 must
5 are supposed to 6 shouldn't

2 1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 a

Exercise 7 page 32

2 Are we supposed to leave a tip?
3 You mustn't enter the temple in shorts.
4 You don't need to speak Spanish.
5 He shouldn't have any problem making friends (in my opinion).
6 It could rain while we're away.
7 Look at the map; this must be the right road!

3C Listening

When in Rome ...

Exercise 2 1.20 page 33

Photo A 1, 3, 4, 8, 9 Photo B 2, 5, 6, 7, 10

Transcript

1 Good afternoon. I don't believe we've met? My name is Kaplan. Helen Kaplan.
2 Hey! Good to see you. What are you guys doing?
3 It's a pleasure to meet you. Allow me to introduce you to my colleagues.
4 This is Mrs Mathison. She's from Canada.
5 This is a friend of mine, Anna. Anna, this is Joe, Steph and Amy.

6 Hi, there. Good to meet you. How do you know Alex?
7 Do you guys fancy grabbing a coffee somewhere?
8 I'm about to go and get a coffee. Could I fetch you a drink at all?
9 It's very kind of you to offer. I'd like a sparkling water, please.
10 Sure, why not? That's a great idea. We weren't doing much, anyway.

Exercise 3 1.20 page 33

1 Good morning / afternoon. 2 I don't believe we've met. 3 It's a pleasure to meet you. 4 Allow me to introduce you to my colleagues. 5 Could I fetch you a coffee at all? 6 It's very kind of you to offer.

Transcript

See exercise 2.

For further practice of formal versus informal language: Vocabulary Builder 3C: page 118

1 1 c 2 d 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 e

2 1 Sorry (informal) 2 apologise (formal) 3 inform (formal) 4 let you know (informal) 5 postponed (formal) 6 put off (informal)

Exercise 4 1.21 page 33

1 f formal language and topic vocabulary: *colleague; We are very much hoping that you will be able to work with us on this.*
2 b tone of voice; informal language, e.g. *Guess what!*
3 d formal language and topic vocabulary: *passengers for flight BA6Y3; gate number 47*
4 e tone of voice; polite request for help: *Could you help me, please? I'm trying to find Leicester Square.*
5 c formal language; the topic is a news item: *The government has issued a statement regarding travel to Africa in the near future*; tone of voice
6 a tone of voice; informal language; language of persuasion: *Tired of queuing in busy airports? ... Then you need FASTRACK!*

Transcript

1 **A** Mrs Simons, allow me to introduce you to my colleague, John Turner.
B Good evening, Mr Turner. I've heard so much about you.
C Likewise, Mrs Simons. It's a pleasure to finally meet you. We are very much hoping that you will be able to work with us on this.
2 **A** Guess what! Jim and I have just booked flights to Mexico!
B Really? Sounds great. Lucky you.
3 Would passengers for flight BA6Y3 please make their way to gate number 47. Gate number 47, please.
4 **A** Excuse me, could you help me, please? I'm trying to find Leicester Square.
B It's OK. You're quite near. Just walk along this street and turn right.
5 The government has issued a statement regarding travel to Africa in the near future. All those intending to visit there are advised to check with the Foreign Office as to whether their chosen destination is affected by the virus.
6 Tired of queuing in busy airports? Tired of waiting to check in? Tired of searching for a seat in the departure lounge? Then you need FASTRACK! Become a member of FASTRACK and airline travel will fast become a pleasure, not a chore!

Exercise 5 1.22 page 33

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

Transcript

1 **A** Hey, Anna, how was your trip to Hong Kong?
B Great, thanks, Steve.
A What's Hong Kong like?
B Gosh, it's amazing. I had a wonderful time. It's ultra-modern in so many ways, but the culture is so different, it's easy to make a mistake.
A Like what?
B Well, tell me what's wrong with this: I was at lunch with my colleague and a group of people, and someone came over to be introduced. So I put my chopsticks into my rice bowl and turned round to speak to them.
A What? You shouldn't turn round at the dinner table? You mustn't show your back to anyone?
B No! You mustn't put your chopsticks into your rice and leave them sticking straight up!
A Really? Why not?
B Because it means someone has died. It is *only* done at funerals and is a big no-no at any other time.
A But how were you to know that?
B I don't know. It's not something we would think about, is it? Well, everybody at the table gasped. I looked up and they were either frowning or pursing their lips at me. I blushed and fidgeted – I had no idea what I'd done wrong until my colleague took my chopsticks out of my rice and put them next to my bowl.
A Oh dear. It seems like such a little thing.
B I know. I wish someone had told me.
2 **A** Queue this side, please ... Take a large tray and put all your personal items in it. Sir, please remove your shoes and belt if you're wearing one and place them in the tray. Put your watch, phone, the contents of your pockets, and liquids under 100 millilitres in a bag in a separate tray! Thank you.
B Excuse me, where do I put my laptop?
A Take it out of its case and put it in this tray here.
B OK.
A Please wait to be called through the archway.
C ... Step forward, please.
B Oh dear.
C Stand over to one side, sir. Raise your arms. Empty your pockets, sir.
B I have some change here. Sorry.
C You should have put anything from your pockets into the small tray. Pass through the archway again, please.
B OK.
C Fine. Collect your belongings from over there, sir.
3 Secret Hideaway offer holidays with a difference – peace and quiet in an unspoiled location off the beaten track. Swim in the crystal clear waters of a warm sea. Recline by a beautiful pool in lush tropical gardens. Hike up a stunning mountain trail with panoramic views of the surrounding countryside. Take a boat out and tour hidden coves or snorkel through underwater caves. Be as active or as lazy as you want – just you and nature and a little bit of luxury. Choose online from our selection of holiday destinations and go where the crowds aren't. Book your secret hideaway now. Special prices until the end of the month. Don't miss out. You know it's just the holiday you're looking for and haven't found yet because it's secret ... shhhh ...

4 One of the many delights of the street markets here is the sheer abundance of the different herbs and spices on offer. Just look here at the piles of turmeric, cumin, paprika and garlic. Wonderful. Also wonderful are all the snacks that you can buy, freshly cooked right here on the spot. They say the best food you can eat here in Morocco is on the street in the markets, not in the hotels or cafés. I'm going to try some of this local crusty bread – called *khobz* – with a rich fava bean soup, flavoured with as much garlic as possible! You don't have to use cutlery – you can eat it with your fingers, dipping the bread into the soup. Oh my! It's delicious! You must come here and try it for yourself.

Exercise 6 1.22 page 33
1 b 2 b 3 c 4 a

Transcript
See exercise 5.

3D Grammar

Modals in the past

Exercise 2 1.23 page 34
1 shouldn't 2 ought 3 might 4 could
5 must 6 should

Transcript
See Student's Book page 34.

Exercise 3 page 34
a I might not have embarrassed myself so badly
b I shouldn't have gone without reading about their customs. I really ought to have been better prepared
c Aki could have told me not to blow my nose in public!
d The people in the restaurant must have thought I was so rude!
e I sent it on Monday, so it should have arrived by now.

Exercise 4 page 34
1 can't have / couldn't have
2 might have / could have
3 shouldn't have / ought not to have
4 may not have / might not have
5 must have / should have / ought to have
6 must have

Exercise 5 page 34
1 I'm sure you needn't have done.
2 I probably didn't need to send them anything, but I really wanted to apologise.

For further practice of modals in the past: Grammar Builder 3.3 page 130
1 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 a

Exercise 6 page 34
1 both
2 didn't need to stop
3 both
4 didn't need to wait
5 didn't need to pay

Exercise 7 page 34
1 must have slept
2 didn't need to buy
3 couldn't / might not / may not have got
4 might / may / could have left
5 needn't have booked
6 shouldn't / ought not to have brought

3E Word Skills

American English

Exercise 1 1.24 page 35
film – movie
flat – apartment;
lift – elevator
petrol – gas
tap – faucet
toilet – restroom

Transcript
1 Hey – it's me! How are you doing? Erm, are you busy? Only I'm moving into my new apartment, but the elevator's broken. I don't suppose you could give me a hand moving my stuff?
2 Er, hi, it's me again. Thanks for helping with the move earlier! Look, I was just driving back from seeing a movie and I've run out of gas. Do you think you could you pick me up?
3 Guess who! Thanks for picking me up earlier. Er, you haven't seen my keys, have you? Only I think I may have left them in the restroom when we stopped earlier. I'm pretty sure I left them by the faucet. Now I can't get into my new place!

Exercise 2 page 35
vacation (holiday); transportation (transport); subway (underground); anyhow (anyway); fall (autumn); soccer (football); yard (garden)

Exercise 3 page 35
head teacher BrE
principal NAmE

Exercise 4 page 35
biscuit (BrE) – cookie (AmE)
candy (AmE) – sweets (BrE)
cell phone (AmE) – mobile (BrE)
check (AmE) – bill (BrE)
motorway (BrE) – highway (AmE)
queue (BrE) – line (AmE);
sidewalk (AmE) – pavement (BrE)
sneakers (AmE) – trainers (BrE)
torch (BrE) – flashlight (AmE)

For further practice of American English: Vocabulary Builder 3E: page 118
3 1 bathing suit – swimming costume; pants – trousers; sneakers – trainers; sweater – jumper; undershirt – vest; vest – waistcoat
2 eraser – rubber; hot lunch – school dinner; math – maths; recess – break time; teachers' lounge – staff room
3 cupcake – fairy cake; dessert – pudding; eggplant – aubergine; jelly – jam; takeout – takeaway

Exercise 5 page 35
1 handbag 2 car park 3 crisps 4 bin
5 wardrobe 6 dummy

Exercise 6 page 35
1 neighbor – neighbour
practice – practise
license – licence
theater –theatre
2 organized – organised

Exercise 7 1.25 page 35
2 Br 3 Am 4 Br 5 Am 6 Am 7 Br
8 Am 9 Br 10 Br

Transcript
See Student's Book page 35.

Exercise 8 1.26 page 35
1 Am 2 Br 3 Am 4 Am 5 Br 6 Br

Transcript
1 So today we're making a lovely tomato and yoghurt sauce. Of course tomatoes are full of vitamins, so this is a really healthy option.
2 I can't believe I ran out of petrol! No, I can't find a garage anywhere. I've had to leave the car parked next to the pavement and take the underground instead.
3 Yeah, my folks have booked a vacation to South Africa in the fall. It should be cool – we'll get to see lions and elephants and zebras and stuff.
4 Sorry I'm so late. I only stopped off to pick up some cookies and some chips, but I had to wait in line for ages. I wish I hadn't bothered.
5 That was delicious. Shall we get the bill then? Could you pass me my purse – it's just there in the top of my handbag.
6 Oh, hello – yes, I saw your advertisement for the half-price trainers. Could I order a pair, please? They're just what I need for playing football. My address? Yes, it's ...

3F Reading

The Kite Runner

Exercise 3 page 36
2

Exercise 4 page 36
1 C 2 E 3 A 4 B

Exercise 5 page 36
1 E 2 B 3 A 4 D 5 C

Exercise 6 page 36
1 thin-boned
2 home-made
3 deep-throated
4 low-set
5 longhaired

3G Speaking

Topic-based presentation

Exercise 3 1.28 page 38

Transcript
The photos show two different family celebrations. The first is probably a wedding reception, judging by the smart clothes and the flowers. The second looks like a more informal occasion – maybe a birthday party. Both are very common family celebrations in my country – and probably in most other countries too.
As far as food is concerned, family celebrations always include some special dishes. For example, at a wedding, there is always soup, which the bride and groom eat together with one spoon. And of course, when it's a birthday, there's always cake.
There's something else I'd like to talk about: there are some interesting traditions connected with weddings. For example, at the beginning of the wedding reception, somebody breaks a plate at the feet of the bride. The bride and groom then clear up the mess together. It doesn't sound like fun, but really, it's a symbol of the bride and groom working together. Then, towards the end of the wedding reception, some friends of the married couple take the bride away and hide her. The groom has to find her. If he fails to find her, he has to pay money.

Exercise 4 page 38
1 concerned 2 now 3 else 4 subject 5 turn

Exercise 5 1.28 page 38
The student says phrases 1 and 3.
The student doesn't mention the second bullet point.

Transcript
See exercise 3.

3H Writing

A blog post

Exercise 3 page 39
The advantages of the festival: paragraph 2; A personal experience of the festival: paragraph 3; The writer gives more or less equal space to these two elements.
The writer also includes an introduction and conclusion.

Exercise 4 page 39
1 Having arrived later to hear the bands play, ...
2 As families crowded around the food stalls, the music played non-stop.; Looking around, I could see ...

Exercise 5 page 39
2 As we lay in the sun, we read magazines. / Lying in the sun, we read magazines.
3 As the band played, the sun came out.
4 After swimming, they wrote postcards. / Having swum, they wrote postcards.
5 As you watched the film, you fell asleep. / Watching the film, you fell asleep.

2 Exam Skills Trainer

Exercise 1 page 40

C

A is incorrect because the text says 'eating up all the forbidden food before the fast'.
B is incorrect because the text says 'traditionally preceded forty days of fasting'.
D is incorrect because the text says 'translated from the French'.

Exercise 2 page 40

1 C 2 D 3 B 4 D 5 A

Exercise 3 page 41

(Possible answers)

A The speaker said *hello* when they meant to say *goodbye*.
B The speaker said *tree* instead of *three*.
C The speaker said *go* instead of *play*.
D The speaker said *yes* instead of *no*.
E The speaker heard *skirt* instead of *shirt*.

Exercise 4 2.02 page 41

Speaker 1 D Speaker 2 A Speaker 3 E Speaker 4 B

Transcript

Speaker 1 This happened to me during my Erasmus year in Germany. I'd made friends with a German girl called Lina, and one day she invited me to her grandmother's house for lunch. As we all sat down at the table, Lina's grandmother said that she hoped I would enjoy the meal: it's *Guten Apetit* in German. I wanted to reply *Same to you* which in German is *gleichfalls*. Unfortunately, I came out with *Durchfalls* instead, which means 'diarrhoea'. Everything went quiet and then Lina told me what I'd said. I nearly died of embarrassment!

Speaker 2 I made a real fool of myself when we were on holiday in Greece one year. I always like to learn a few words of the language when I go abroad, and that year was no exception. When we arrived at our hotel, I walked straight up to reception and said *kalimari* to the receptionist. My confidence was shattered when she burst out laughing, as did the rest of my family. It turns out that I'd used the word for squid – *kalamari* instead of the word for *Good morning* – *kalimera*. That was the last time I spoke any Greek on that holiday!

Speaker 3 I was in Venice on an exchange visit and for some reason or other, I was teaching my host family how to count in Spanish. I was walking backwards saying the numbers for them to repeat: *seis*, *seis*; *siete*, *siete*; *ocho*, *ocho* ... *OCHO*! *OCHO*!!! – I couldn't understand what they were getting so excited about! Suddenly, I was hit by a cart full of fish: the family hadn't been repeating *ocho* to mean number eight; they were saying *Occhio!*, which means *Watch out!* in their particular dialect of Italian. The little old man pushing the cart was very apologetic, but I felt like a complete idiot!

Speaker 4 I had a terribly embarrassing experience once when I was trying to buy a rail ticket in France. I was at a station in Paris and I wanted to go to Avignon in the South. When it was my turn, I went up to the desk and asked for a return to Avignon. The woman looked at me for a moment and then said, *Pardon?* – *Sorry?*, so I repeated my request. Imagine my surprise when she told me they didn't sell that kind of ticket at the station. It appears that I hadn't said *Avignon* correctly and she had understood *avion* – plane. She thought I was trying to buy a plane ticket!

Exercise 5 page 41

1 past perfect simple / continuous, *for* / *since*
2 *used to* + infinitive
3 qualifying comparatives
4 *had better* + infinitive without *to*
5 *be supposed to*
6 past modals

Exercise 6 page 41

1 had been performing for 2 hadn't been 3 is much smaller than 4 had better not park 5 Are we supposed to pay 6 could have told

Exercise 7 page 41

1 Shall 2 need / have 3 don't 4 about

Exercise 10 page 41

4

4 Holidays and tourism

Map of resources

4A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 42–43; Workbook, page 40
Photocopiable: 4A (Getting away from it all)

4B Grammar
Student's Book, page 44; Workbook, page 41
Photocopiable: 4B (Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous)

4C Listening
Student's Book, page 45; Workbook, page 42

4D Grammar
Student's Book, page 46; Workbook, page 43
Photocopiable: 4D (Future time clauses)

4E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 47; Workbook, page 44

4F Reading
Student's Book, pages 48–49; Workbook, page 45

4G Speaking
Student's Book, page 50; Workbook, page 46

4H Writing
Student's Book, page 51; Workbook, page 47

Culture 4
Student's Book, page 111
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 4

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 4

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 48–49
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review
Exam Skills Trainer 2: Workbook, pages 50–51
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 4

4A Vocabulary

Getting away from it all

Exercise 2 page 42

Holidays adventure holiday, backpacking, beach holiday, camping, city break, couch-surfing, cruise, cycling holiday, ecotourism, house swap, package holiday, volunteering, winter sports holiday
Holiday accommodation B&B, beach house, cabin, camper van, campsite, caravan, cottage, guest house, holiday camp, holiday home, hotel, houseboat, self-catering apartment, tent, time-share apartment, villa, youth hostel

Exercise 3 page 42

(Possible answers)
In photo A, there is a beautiful beach house with a roof made of grass or leaves. The house is on the beach, right in front of the sea.
In photo B, there are some young people on a cycling holiday. They have stopped at a river bank and one girl is taking a photo of the scene.
In photo C, there are some large tents and camper vans at a camping site.
In photo D, some people on a city break are enjoying the view of a city from a high place.

Exercise 5 page 43

1 see 2 take 3 eat 4 get away 5 broaden
6 have 7 soak up 8 try 9 be 10 pamper
11 hang out 12 enjoy 13 meet 14 recharge

Exercise 7 page 43

1 soaking up 2 physically 3 house 4 sights
5 ecotourism 6 self-catering 7 local 8 volunteering
9 package 10 city break 11 cruise 12 couch-surfing

For further practice of holiday idioms: Vocabulary Builder 4A page 119

1
1 had a whale of a time
2 everything but the kitchen sink
3 just what the doctor ordered
4 home from home
5 recharge my batteries
6 in the middle of nowhere
7 a short break
8 make a nice change

Exercise 9 page 43

(Possible answers)
Photo A breathtaking, remote, unique, unspoilt
Photo B remote, unspoilt
Photo C dull, overcrowded
Photo D breathtaking, vibrant

Exercise 10 page 43

Positive breathtaking, hospitable, mind-blowing, remote, unique, unspoilt, vibrant (Also: stunning, extraordinary, tranquil, lively, sophisticated)
Negative commercialised, dingy, dull, inaccessible, overcrowded, remote, run-down (Also: seedy, tacky, spoilt)

Exercise 11 2.03 page 43

Holiday 1 remote
Holiday 2 breathtaking, inaccessible
Holiday 3 overcrowded, commercialised
Holiday 4 dull, dingy

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Transcript

1 **Lilly** If only we were already on holiday!
Harry Well, there are only a few weeks to go.
Lilly Have you checked out the route?
Harry Yes. Most of it's along country paths, so we won't have to deal with traffic very often. In fact, there are very few real roads that cross the area. If you wanted to escape from the world, this would be a great place to live because it's really difficult to get to.

2 **Sam** What are your plans for this summer?
Amy My best friend and I have decided to help the National Trust.
Sam Really? That sounds more like hard work than a holiday!
Amy Well, it depends on what you understand by the word 'holiday'! I love visiting historic buildings, and the National Trust looks after them and they organise Youth Discovery holidays for young adults.
Sam So where are you going and what are you doing?
Amy We're going to help do some conservation work at Lindisfarne Castle. It's on a small island, just off the north-east coast of England and the views are spectacular.
Sam A castle? If I spent a few nights there, I'd be worried about meeting ghosts wandering around at night!
Amy I hope we don't because you can't get off the island at times because of storms!

3 **Andy** So what was it like?
Ann Disappointing, to be honest. I was expecting a quiet seaside resort, but there were loads of people everywhere.
Andy Was there any nightlife?
Ann There was too much. The town was full of clubs, bars and restaurants, and the only shops were selling souvenirs.
Andy It sounds awful! I'm glad I spoke to you because we were thinking of going there.
Ann Well, I wouldn't go if you want to relax! Instead of relaxing, we came back feeling stressed!

4 **Jack** My mum and dad are talking about booking a holiday in Spain at the same hotel that we went to last year, but I wish they'd change their minds. I'd prefer to stay at home!
Chloe Why? I'd be really pleased if I had the chance to go to Spain! A nice hotel near the beach with everything organised – if only *we* stayed in places like that!
Jack Well, last year, we never went anywhere and spent all our time in the hotel complex, which was really boring. The hotel was quite old as well and hadn't been decorated in years. What did you do?
Chloe We stayed at home and went on day trips.
Jack At least you did different things. I wish we had done different things in Spain!

Exercise 12 2.03 page 43

1 She wishes they were already on holiday.
2 He would be worried about meeting ghosts.
3 This wouldn't be a great place to visit.
4 She would be pleased.

Transcript

See exercise 11.

4B Grammar

Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous

Exercise 1 page 44

It is a holiday company for young people. It has been running for nine years.

Exercise 2 page 44

2 We'll have sent; you'll have received
3 we'll have been organising

Exercise 3 page 44

1 won't have left 2 will have been travelling
3 will be taking 4 will be sailing 5 will have arrived
6 will be staying

For further practice of the future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous: Grammar Builder 4.1 page 131

1 1 will have been learning 2 will be catching 3 will have travelled 4 will have saved 5 will have been living 6 will have left 7 will be waiting

2 1 At / By 9 a.m. on Sunday, they'll have finished breakfast.
2 At 10 a.m. on Sunday, they'll be waiting for the bus to the beach.
3 At / By 11.30 a.m. on Monday, they'll have been walking for two hours.
4 At / By 1 p.m. on Monday, they won't have left Rome.
5 At / By 2 p.m. on Monday, they'll be travelling on the train to Venice.
6 At / By 6.30 p.m. on Monday, they'll have arrived at the hostel.

Exercise 4 page 44

1 Will you be having a package holiday this year?
2 What time will you be getting to the airport?
3 Where will the cruise ship be visiting?
4 Who will be travelling with you to the States?
5 When will the restaurant be serving breakfast?

Exercise 5 page 44

1 'll have arrived 2 'll be lying 3 'll have found
4 'll have taken 5 will he be practising 6 'll have made

Exercise 6 page 44

1 I'll have been learning
2 'll have been waiting
3 Will, be entering
4 'll be visiting
5 'll have saved
6 won't have missed
7 won't be going

4C Listening

Trip of a lifetime

Exercise 2 page 45

1 light 2 taste 3 have 4 sleep 5 put up
6 help 7 get 8 travel 9 go 10 do

Exercise 3 2.04 page 45

1 a The speakers are husband and wife / boyfriend and girlfriend.
b The man is on a train; the woman is at home.
2 a The speakers are friends or classmates.
b They are at school.
3 a The speakers are acquaintances.
b They are in a coffee shop.
4 a The speakers are a hotel guest and the hotel receptionist.
b They are at the reception desk of a hotel.

Transcript

1 **A** Hello?
B Hi, darling. I just made the 4.55 after all!
A Oh, well done! You must have run to the station!
B I did! Well, no … actually, I got a cab! Anyway, I should be back around the usual time.
A That's great. See you in a couple of hours. Safe journey.

2 **A** Hey, John. Why are you carrying that huge rucksack into class?
B I'm off to Dartmoor National Park very soon – straight after the last lesson. There's a group of us who camp up there in the hills at weekends. It's just amazing.
A Wow, sounds great. But you don't travel light, do you?!
B Well, I need it all. By this evening, I'll have put up the tent in some remote spot and we'll be lighting a campfire!
A That's a good way of getting away from it all!
B You should join us one day.
A Nah, don't fancy sleeping rough! But have a great trip!

3 **A** Hi. You're Mandy, Erica's cousin, aren't you?
B Yes, that's right.
A Hi, I'm Ellen – a friend of Erica's from school. I was just walking past and saw you in here. I'm not interrupting anything, am I?
B Not at all. I've just ordered a coffee.
A It's just that Erica said you'd done some volunteer work in South America.
B Yes, I did, last year. Are you thinking of going?
A I am. Did you have a good experience?
B Yes, it was wonderful.
A Could I just ask you some questions about it?
B Have you got a minute to join me for a coffee just now and I'll tell you about it? I don't have to be anywhere till one. The waiter will be back in a minute.
A Yeah, that'd be great, thanks! I'm out shopping and have plenty of time.

4 **A** Good evening, sir. Can I help you?
B Yes, I have a reservation under the name of Black.
A Let me just have a look. Yes, here we are. Mr Black, a single room for two nights. You're in room 407, which has a lovely view of the city. Can I get someone to help you with your bags?
B Thank you, but I just have this small one. Can you tell me what time the restaurant is open?
A At seven, in just over an hour's time. We serve some wonderful local dishes. Have you tasted any of the local food?
B No, I haven't. I'm looking forward to it.

Exercise 4 2.04 page 45

Dialogue 1
1 The speakers are husband and wife or boyfriend and girlfriend. (*Hi, darling.*)
2 It is about five o'clock in the afternoon. (*I just made the 4.55 after all!*)
3 The man is not going to be home late after all. (*Anyway, I should be back around the usual time.*)

Dialogue 2
1 The speakers are friends or classmates. (*Hey, John. Why are you carrying that huge rucksack into class?*)
2 It is afternoon, near the end of school. (*I'm off to Dartmoor National Park very soon – straight after the last lesson.*)
3 One speaker asks why the other speaker is carrying a rucksack into class and the friends chat.

Dialogue 3
1 The speakers hardly know each other. (*Hi, you're Mandy, Erica's cousin, aren't you? Hi, I'm Ellen – a friend of Erica's from school.*)
2 It is probably late morning or early afternoon. (*I don't have to be anywhere till one.*)
3 The first speaker would like to find out some information from the second speaker. (*Did you have a good experience? Could I just ask you some questions about it?*)

Dialogue 4
1 The speakers are a hotel guest and the hotel receptionist. (*Good evening, sir. Can I help you? Yes, I have a reservation under the name of Black.*)
2 It is just before six in the evening. (*Can you tell me what time the restaurant is open? At seven, in just over an hour's time.*)
3 The guest is checking in.

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 45

A 2 B 3 C 4 D 1

Exercise 6 2.05 page 45

1 F 2 NG 3 T 4 F 5 F 6 NG 7 T

Transcript

A Hey, Annie, darling, how was the gym?
B Fine, but I'm starving now. You should have come, Simon!
A Nah, too busy. But look at this!
B Just give me a minute – let me sit down and take my coat off! What are you having?
A Oh, I've had toast … There's a pot of tea here. Just help yourself. Or you could order some more – the waiter's just over there. But look! Read this!
B Antarctica, trip of a lifetime … cruise past towering crystal icebergs, encounter pods of whales … Uhuh … uhuh … OK. And?
A Doesn't it sound fantastic? Don't you think it would be an amazing holiday? A one-off experience?
B You're suggesting this as a holiday?
A Absolutely. It's just perfect. I'd love to do something like that.

B Would you really? I had no idea you were into that sort of thing. Isn't it extremely pricey?
A A bit. But look here. The cheapest trip is eleven days – it's a cruise package. £3,700.
B A cruise? A package trip? That's not like you. We've always avoided travel companies because you want to go off the beaten track – without queues of tourists.
A This is not quite the same thing! There are hardly going to be queues in Antarctica. It's a package holiday, sort of, but with a difference! Groups are small, around ten people, and you travel in a little boat, not an ocean liner.
B I thought that trips to Antarctica weren't supposed to be good for the environment. I read about that somewhere. Too many tourist boats were breaking up the ice or something.
A But it says here that the trip is completely environmentally friendly. The company has won awards for it.
B Well, OK. Maybe that one's all right then … Anyway, I've got to order some food, quickly. I've got to go soon, or I'll be late for work.
A Me too. I've got a meeting at 9.30. Anyway, look, the best time to go is between November and March.
B Why's that?
A Because that's when it's warmest! That's the Antarctic summer.
B Really, well, how hot is it then?
A Hot … That's funny. It's maximum 2°C!
B Lovely. So no swimming then.
A Hmm. I can see you're taking the idea of this trip seriously …
B It's not my cup of tea, I'm afraid. But, are you really serious about this?
A Well, no. Not if you aren't interested.
B Why? You can go, if you want.
A Well … I can't go on our honeymoon on my own, can I?
B What? Did you just say what I think you just said … ?

4D Grammar

Future time clauses

Exercise 2 page 46

1 by the time you read this
2 as soon as I've arrived in Berlin
3 while I'm relaxing on the boat!

For further practice of future time clauses: Grammar Builder 4.2 page 131

1 1 I've got 2 he gets 3 we're skiing 4 you finish 5 it's 6 we've tidied 7 you have

2 1 am walking 2 get 3 feel 4 finds / has found 5 are visiting 6 takes 7 goes

Exercise 3 page 46

1 a 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 b

Exercise 4 page 46

… if I don't slow down a bit, I'll have run out of energy by the end of the trip! (*if* + present simple, future perfect)
If there are tickets left, I'll buy some for us. (*if* + present simple, *will* future)

Exercise 5 page 46

1 haven't arrived 2 'll phone 3 catch
4 'll get 5 's raining 6 'll bring
7 give 8 see 9 remind

For further practice of first conditional sentences: Grammar Builder 4.3 page 132

1 1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 b 6 c 7 a

Exercise 6 page 46

1 By the time I get there, it'll be dark. / It'll be dark by the time I get there.
2 I'll go tonight on condition that someone else drives.
3 We won't go out until Josh gets here.
4 If you book your flight by midnight, you'll get a discount! / You'll get a discount if you book your flight by midnight!
5 We'll pay for the room when we arrive. / When we arrive, we'll pay for the room.
6 I'm not going swimming if the sun doesn't shine. / If the sun doesn't shine, I'm not going swimming.
7 He'll email you after he's talked to me. / After he's talked to me, he'll email you.

4E Word Skills

Adverbs and adverbial phrases

Exercise 2 page 47

1 weekly (budget) – adjective; (book) early – adverb
2 (at a more) leisurely (pace) – adjective
3 (so think) hard – adverb; (You're) hardly (going to need) – adverb

For further practice of adverbs and adverbial phrases: Grammar Builder 4.4 page 132

1 1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 a 7 a

Exercise 3 page 47

1 early 2 daily 3 closely 4 lately 5 quickly
6 friendly

Exercise 4 page 47

1 a deep b deeply
2 a roughly b rough
3 a pretty b prettily
4 a near b nearly
5 a direct b directly
6 a widely b wide
7 a flatly b flat

Exercise 5 page 47

1 pretty 2 daily 3 for free 4 hard
5 lately 6 flat 7 rough 8 monthly

4F Reading

Globetrotters

Exercise 1 page 48

(Possible answer)

The plane is the best method of travelling long distances because it is the fastest and the most comfortable.

Exercise 2 page 48

C 1 A 2 B 4

Exercise 3 page 48

A To travel the world on his motorbike.
B To travel from Europe, across Africa to the South Pole.
C To travel around eleven countries in 42 days with just the things he could carry in his pockets.

Exercise 4 page 48

1 The word *blog* appears in all three texts. Text A: ... *he has shared his experiences on his blog ... Furthermore, he uses his blog to raise donations* ... Text B: ... *following her blog to write down their own dreams. Manon explained on her blog* ... Text C: *He was an experienced traveller who wrote a blog* ...
2 Alex in text A.

Exercise 5 page 48

1 A 2 C 3 A 4 B 5 A 6 B

Exercise 6 page 48

(Possible answers)

1 He uses his blog to tell other people about his experiences and show them the places he visits. He also asks people to donate money to a charity that works with orphans.
2 He will have been travelling for thirteen years.
3 She travelled slowly and had the chance to get to know people, who were attracted to the tractor.
4 She asked people to send her messages about their dreams and put these messages into a time capsule which she left in a snowman that she made at the South Pole.
5 Because he is an experienced traveller and he writes a blog in which he gives advice about how to travel on a limited budget.
6 Occasions which require special items of clothing or equipment never happen.

Exercise 8 page 48

1 get back
2 pull up
3 go off
4 get around
5 set off
6 come across
7 take in
8 stop over

4G Speaking

Interview and stimulus-based discussion

Exercise 4 2.07 page 50

1 He chooses A, the luxury coach tour. The reasons he gives are: it's cheap and all costs are included, he'll be able to see a lot from the coach windows, it's more convenient and less stressful to go on an organised coach tour.
2 He rejects B, travelling by train, because he doesn't think it's as safe. He doesn't want to organise his own transport in strange places where he doesn't know the language. He doesn't like big train stations very much and finds them stressful.

He rejects C, the cruise, because he doesn't think there'll be many young people on the ship. He gets sea-sick and it's the most expensive.

Transcript

For travelling in my gap year, I think I'll choose to travel by coach, mainly because I won't have a lot of money, and this coach trip is cheap and all costs are covered. I'll want to see as much as possible; the best option would again be the coach, as I think you see more from coach windows. That's because you travel through towns and villages, not just on the outskirts of a place. I also think it's more convenient and less stressful to go on an organised coach tour because you are always taken care of, your accommodation is sorted and you can't get lost!

I wouldn't go for the train ticket option for the reason that I don't think that sort of trip is quite so safe. I worry a lot, so I wouldn't feel comfortable organising my own transport in strange places where I didn't know the language. I also don't like big train stations very much. I find them stressful.

I wouldn't go for the cruise for a number of reasons. First of all, I don't think there'll be many young people on the ship. Secondly, I get sea-sick so I'd spend most of the time lying in my cabin. And finally, I wouldn't opt for that trip because it's the most expensive, and I won't have much money.

Exercise 5 page 50

The student follows the Speaking Strategy well. He gives three reasons for choosing the coach. He gives more than one reason for rejecting the train and more than one reason for rejecting the cruise. One of his reasons for rejecting the cruise is the opposite of one of his reasons for choosing the coach.

Exercise 6 page 50

1 think 2 opting 3 best 4 why 5 go 6 pick

Exercise 7 2.07 page 50

I think I'll choose to travel by coach , mainly because ...
The best option would (again) be the coach.
That's because you travel ...
I wouldn't go for the train ticket option ...
... for the reason that I don't think ...
I wouldn't go for the cruise for a number of reasons.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

Exercise 8 2.08 page 50

(exercise 4)

1 She chooses the Travel Europe Train Ticket because the train is the fastest and she'll be able to see more in a shorter time. She knows you can find student hostel accommodation quite easily and cheaply in European cities. She also likes the freedom and flexibility of choosing your own route and how long you can spend in one place.
2 She rejects the Luxury Coach Tour because she doesn't like long coach journeys, and sometimes she gets travel-sick. The coach is also much slower, and it's more boring because you can't get up and walk around
She rejects the Mediterranean Cruise because she's not interested in ancient history and the places the cruise visits. She doesn't thing it will be comfortable.

(exercise 5)

The student follows the Speaking Strategy well. She gives lots of reasons for choosing the train. She could have given more reasons for rejecting the coach and cruise. One of her reasons for rejecting the coach is the opposite of one of her reasons for choosing the train.

Transcript

The best option would be the train because it's the fastest. I want to travel around Europe, so I'll be able to see more in a shorter time if I go by train. And I know you can find student hostel accommodation quite easily and cheaply in European cities. I also like the freedom and flexibility of choosing your own route and how long you can spend in one place. I would like to be able to say, 'What shall we do today? Shall we go to Rome?'

I wouldn't pick the coach tour basically because I really don't like long coach journeys, and I sometimes get travel-sick, travelling by bus. The coach is also much slower, and it's more boring because you can't get up and walk around. The reason I'm not choosing the cruise is that I'm not really interested in ancient history; the places we'd visit just don't appeal to me. And I don't think it'd be very comfortable on board a sailing ship.

4H Writing

A letter of complaint

Exercise 1 page 51

(Possible answers)

Advantages they are much cheaper than other types of holiday accommodation; you can find them in most places; they are often in beautiful places and are sometimes off the beaten track; you can meet a wide range of ages and nationalities in them, which is interesting; you can usually prepare your own food in the kitchen.

Disadvantages you have to share a room with strangers; you don't have any privacy; it might be noisy and difficult to sleep; you don't get the standard of service that you would in a hotel.

Exercise 2 page 51

(Possible answers)

dingy accommodation; overcrowded rooms; too much noise; bad service

Exercise 4 page 51

1 There are five clear paragraphs.
2 I am writing to complain about our stay at your youth hostel from 14–16 May. I feel we deserve some compensation and I look forward to hearing from you.
3 There was no apology at any point.
4 Dear Sir or Madam, Yours faithfully

Exercise 5 page 51

do not have problems – are not inconvenienced
got – received
happen – arise
looked at – reviewed
really think – feel strongly
said – maintained
she didn't say sorry – There was no apology at any point
showed her – produced

For further practice of word building patterns: Vocabulary Builder 4H page 119

2 1 express 2 impression 3 organisation 4 promoter 5 imaginative 6 communication 7 suggestion

For further practice of the subjunctive: Grammar Builder 4.5 page 133

1 1 that they refund
2 that I practise
3 that we all go
4 that the government change
5 that we read
6 that we be

Exercise 6 page 51

Firstly, I suggest that your online booking system be reviewed …

And finally, I request that there be sufficient bedlinen …

5 Relationships

Map of resources

5A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 52–53; Workbook, page 52
Photocopiable: 5A (Relating to people)

5B Grammar
Student's Book, page 54; Workbook, page 53
Photocopiable: 5B (Negative structures)

5C Listening
Student's Book, page 55; Workbook, page 54

5D Grammar
Student's Book, page 56; Workbook, page 55
Photocopiable: 5D (Articles and quantifiers)

5E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 57; Workbook, page 56

5F Reading
Student's Book, pages 58–59; Workbook, page 57

5G Speaking
Student's Book, page 60; Workbook, page 58
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Speculating and deducing)

5H Writing
Student's Book, page 61; Workbook, page 59

Culture 5
Student's Book, page 112
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 5

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 5

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 60–61
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 3: Student's Book, pages 62–63
Cumulative Review I–5: Workbook, pages 112–113
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 5
Cumulative Test: Units 1–5

5A Vocabulary

Relating to people

Exercise 3 2.09 page 53

Dad should be in the same ring as *Mum*.
Laura and *Tom* should be in the same ring as *Anna*.

Transcript

The people closest to me are my mum and dad. Then there are my two best friends, Anna and Laura, and my cousin Tom. Tom and I go to the same school. He enjoys doing the same things as me, and we like the same type of music. Another person who is important to me, but isn't family or a friend, is Mrs Saunders. Mrs Saunders owns the shoe shop where I work on Saturday mornings, and at the moment she's quite important in my life because without the money from the job, I wouldn't be able pay for the concerts that I go to with Tom!

Exercise 4 2.10 page 53

1 has a lot in common with 2 respects 3 trusts
4 is a bit wary of 5 looks up to 6 see eye to eye with
7 is on the same wavelength as 8 looks up to

Transcript

Katie The people closest to me are my mum and dad. Then there are my two best friends, Anna and Laura, and my cousin Tom. Tom and I go to the same school. He enjoys doing the same things as me, and we like the same type of music. Another person who is important to me, but isn't family or a friend, is Mrs Saunders. Mrs Saunders owns the shoe shop where I work on Saturday mornings, and at the moment she's quite important in my life because without the money from the job, I wouldn't be able pay for the concerts that I go to with Tom!
Ben The two people that I'm closest to are my mum and my sister, Emma. There's only a year between Emma and me, and we get on really well even though we don't really share a lot of interests. I tend to go to her for advice and I often confide in her. Then there's my best friend Callum. We're in the same class at school, and we also play in the same football team at the weekends – actually, he is probably the person I see the most! I also see my cousin, Harry, quite often. Finally, there's Tom Fisher, our football coach. He's really hard on us, and we're not always sure of what his mood is going to be, but he's a great coach. We wouldn't be top of the league without him!
Mark Apart from Mum and Dad, I'm also really close to my auntie, Julia. She's much younger than my mum, and she's more like a sister to me than an aunt. She's so outgoing and I really admire her. And obviously I'm really close to my identical twin brother, James, despite the fact that we spend a lot of time arguing! Outside my family and friends, there are two other people that are quite important in my life. The first is my maths teacher, Mr O'Neil. I always used to hate maths, but this year I've started to understand it much better because of him. Then there's my judo teacher. He's great fun, and thanks to him, I'm about to get my black belt!
Amy Well, I suppose like the majority of people, I'm closest to my immediate family. There's my mum and dad, and my brother and sister, Nathan and Molly. My granny, Alice, has lived with us since my grandad died, and we all love her a lot! Despite the age difference, we really understand each other well. We've got the same terrible sense of humour! Other people that are important to me are my cousin Leah and my best friend, Lily. I always have a good time with them when we meet up! And finally, I've got to mention my tutor from school, Mrs White. Everybody thinks she's a great teacher, but I really respect her because she's so patient with everybody, and she's always positive about life!

Exercise 7 2.11 page 53

In dialogue 1, a man is being teased (about his haircut). In dialogue 2, a student is being praised (for his good work). In dialogue 3, a girl is being flattered (about her personality). In dialogue 4, a teenager is being told off (for going out at the weekend when they should have been revising). In dialogue 5, a driver is being warned (that he will be arrested unless he shows his licence).

Transcript

1 **Colleague 1** Wow, now that's what I call a haircut!
Colleague 2 OK, OK! The hairdresser just took a bit too much off, that's all!
Colleague 1 Just a bit? You look like you're joining the army! When you see the boss, you can salute him!
Colleague 2 Ha, ha! Very funny!

2 **Mr Roberts** Well, David, this is really a great improvement on your last piece of work. It's excellent! Well done! Let's see if you can keep up the good work and get better exam results at the end of this term.
David Thanks, Mr Roberts. I'll do my best!

3 **Mark** You know, Anna, you really are the most interesting person that I've ever met!
Anna Oh, Mark, I think you say the nicest things! I'm so glad you asked me out!

4 **Mother** I knew it would happen! You didn't study hard enough, did you? You were out at the weekend when you should have been revising!
Teen boy Look, Mum, I did my best. Nobody else got a good mark!
Mother I'm not interested in anybody else! I'm interested in seeing you do your best, and you haven't, and you know it!

5 **Police officer** Please show me your driving licence, sir.
Driver Look, I haven't done anything wrong, officer! I know my rights!
Police officer I've asked three times, sir, for your licence. If you don't show it to me now, I'll have to arrest you!

Exercise 8 2.11 page 53

In dialogue 1, a man is being teased by a colleague.
In dialogue 2, a student is being praised by his teacher.
In dialogue 3, a girl is being flattered by her boyfriend.
In dialogue 4, a teenager is being told off by a parent.
In dialogue 5, a driver is being warned by a police officer.

Transcript

See exercise 7.

5B Grammar

Negative structures

Exercise 2 page 54

Under no circumstances; Not only … also;
On no account; Rarely

For further practice of negative adverbials: Grammar Builder 5.1 page 133

1 1 (before) have I eaten 2 no time were we
3 you apologise will she 4 will you see more
5 no circumstances can 6 had they left the house
7 had Ben heard the news

Exercise 3 page 54

1 had we eaten 2 have I broken 3 did anyone explain
4 had / has she met 5 has anyone been 6 will he trust

Exercise 4 page 54

2 Under no circumstances will you be allowed to go.
3 Nowhere could we find a coffee shop open.
4 Hardly had I woken up when my mobile rang.
5 At no time were they aware of the danger.
6 Not until next year will there be any more festivals.

Exercise 5 page 54

Wouldn't it be great if parents and their teenagers got on all the time?
Try not to argue!
You may regret not being patient!

Exercise 6 page 54

1 I'll try not to be late tomorrow. 2 Shouldn't Aidan be studying for the test? 3 I resent him not being honest with me. 4 Kat was upset not to be invited. 5 You should try not to argue about it. 6 Isn't it difficult not to judge people?

For further practice of negative questions, infinitives and *-ing* forms: Grammar Builder 5.2 page 133

1 1 I was sorry not to see him yesterday.
2 Aren't you meant to be on holiday?
3 Shouldn't he have gone to bed earlier?
4 She promised not to do it again.
5 I prefer not knowing what the score is.
6 Doesn't this coffee taste unpleasant?
7 They would rather not discuss the matter.

Exercise 7 page 54

1 Rarely does he go out during the week.
2 In no way was he to blame.
3 Try not to worry about the future.
4 She was lucky not to hurt herself badly.
5 Only when they know the facts will they decide.
6 Haven't we been here before?

5C Listening

Sibling rivalry

Exercise 3 2.12 page 55

1 What's your name? 2 My little brother is only two.
3 Let's go to my house. 4 The twins have got blue eyes.

Transcript

1 What's your name? (Wos your name?)
2 My little brother's only two. (My little brother sonly two.)
3 Let's go to my house. (Les go te my house.)
4 The twins have got blue eyes. (The twins ev got blue weyes.)

Exercise 4 2.12 page 55

Transcript

See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 55

1 point 3 2 point 2 3 point 3 4 point 1

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercise 6 page 55

1 two or
2 your address
3 bad cough
4 ten-pin
5 best friend
6 tastes bad

Exercise 7 2.13 page 55

See transcript.

Transcript

1 I've got two or three dictionaries. (two wor three)
2 Is this your address? (your raddress)
3 I've got a bad cough. (bag cough)
4 We went ten-pin bowling. (tem-pin)
5 She's my best friend. (bes friend)
6 This coffee tastes bad. (tase bad)

Exercise 8 2.14 page 55

1 c 2 b 3 a

Transcript

1 My sister, Sarah, was seven when I was born, and my arrival was a big shock to her. Until then, she'd had a very close bond with Mum. But my birth was difficult, and both Mum and I were ill for a while afterwards. I was also underweight at birth, and Mum fussed over me for a long time. So my sister went from being an adored only child to an unnoticed child, and she was miserable. Later, when she was a teenager, Mum went back to work and Sarah always had to take care of me after school instead of seeing her friends. I had no idea about any of this at the time. I just knew my sister wasn't nice to me. But since she left home, we have managed to talk, and we understand each other better. I think we're friends now.

2 **Beth** You've got my laptop charger! Give me that back! I've been looking for it for ages!
Jamie It's mine. I've had it for ages.
Beth It isn't yours. It's got my name on it, look!
Jamie That's not fair. You just wrote that on a minute ago!
Beth I did not!
Jamie Yes, you did, you liar. Look, the pen is the same colour as the one you're doing your homework with now.
Beth I can write *my* name on *my* things!
Jamie Not five minutes after taking it out of *my* room, you can't. It's bad enough that you're always borrowing my things without asking, but now you're just stealing them!
Beth I am not! This was mine in the first place!
Jamie For the last time – it's MINE.

3 **Interviewer** So, how did you get on when you were growing up?
Max Isaac and I never got along when we were younger, did we, Isaac?
Isaac No, we didn't! I'm two years older, and you were determined to follow me everywhere I went.
Max Isaac was tall, strong and popular, and I always wanted to be like him. So, yes, I followed him around a lot. I was always asking him to play with me, and he rarely said yes. When he had his friends over, I would think up ridiculous reasons to go into his room and interrupt them. He would get furious with me and push me out. Do you remember that?
Isaac Yes, I do – sorry! But you were so annoying! I couldn't get rid of you. And it wasn't cool to have a little brother hanging around me and my friends.
Max You even bought a lock and put it on the door! Sometimes I would get mad and do something mean like hide his school books or spill ink on his school shirt.
Interviewer Oh dear. How did you feel, Isaac?
Isaac I didn't even realise!
Max All I wanted was for Isaac to spend some time with me.
Interviewer How are things now?
Max Now that he's eighteen and I'm sixteen, things are better.
Isaac They are. We get on well now. And he's almost as tall as me now!

Exercise 9 2.15 page 55

Transcript

1 Sarah always had to take care of me after school. (me yafter school)
2 I had no idea about any of this at the time. (no widea rabout tany … a'the time)
3 Give me that back! (tha back)
4 I've been looking for it for ages! (for rit for rages)
5 I always wanted to be like him. (always swanted)
6 How did you feel, Isaac? (didju feel)

5D Grammar

Articles and quantifiers

Exercise 2 page 56

1 a/an 2 the 3 a/an 4 – 5 the 6 – 7 the 8 the
1 a challenge 2 the challenge 3 a (minor) role; an animal 4 Europe 5 the USA 6 Buddy movies; different backgrounds; different personalities; action films; road movies; westerns; women 7 the earliest 8 the old; the young

For further practice of articles: Grammar Builder 5.3 page 134

1 1 a, –, the 2 a, the 3 the, – 4 a, a, – 5 the, a 6 –, the 7 a, The, the 8 a, The, the

Exercise 3 page 56

1 the, – 2 the, the 3 a, –, – 4 a, – 5 a, a, The 6 –, the

For further practice of quantifiers: Grammar Builder 5.4 page 134

1 1 a few 2 either 3 little 4 None 5 few 6 both 7 a little 8 Every one

2 1 of 2 of 3 – 4 of 5 – 6 – 7 of 8 of

Exercise 4 page 56

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 d 8 b 9 a 10 d

5E Word Skills

Phrasal verbs

Exercise 1 page 57

a let down b put down c bring up d put off
e split up (with) f put up with
Six: turn up, go out with, get on, put through, get over, ask out

Exercise 2 page 57

Transitive bring up, go out with, put down, let down, put up with, put through, split up with, get over, put off, ask out
Intransitive turn up, get on

Exercise 3 page 57

1 *Turn sb/sth down* and *make sth up* are separable. *Look after sb/sth, run into sb* and *take after sb* are inseparable. *Talk sb into sth* must be separated. 2 Separable verbs are indicated with ↔. Non-separable verbs have *sb/sth* after the particle, but no ↔. Verbs that must be separated have *sb/sth* between the verb and the particle, and no ↔.

Exercise 4 page 57

Separable bring up, put down, let down
Inseparable go out with, put up with, split up with, get over
Must be separated put through, put off, ask out

For further practice of relationship phrasal verbs: Vocabulary Builder 5E: page 119

1 **Starting a relationship** ask someone out, chat someone up, fall for someone, go out with someone, run after someone **Finishing a relationship** break off something, get over someone / something, go off someone, pack something in, split up (with someone)

2 1 split up 2 broken off 3 gone off 4 pack (it) in 5 fell for 6 get over

Exercise 5 page 57

1 talk her parents into
2 splitting up with her, to get over him
3 take after my aunt
4 keep making them up
5 put me off having
6 put up with it
7 you didn't run into him in
8 you put her through

Exercise 6 page 57

2 Have you ever made up a reason not to meet someone?
3 Who do you take after most in your family?
4 Have you ever regretted turning down an invitation?
5 Which person do you get on with (the) best?
6 Would you agree to look after a friend's pet if they asked?

5F Reading

Love is in the air

Exercise 3 page 59

backgrounds – noun; confirmed – verb; findings – noun; in depth – idiom / adverb; release – verb

Exercise 4 page 59

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 b

Exercise 5 page 59

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 c 5 c

Exercise 6 page 59

1 guinea pigs 2 organs 3 immune systems 4 mates 5 offspring 6 genes 7 paper 8 proof

5G Speaking

Photo description and comparison

Exercise 2 page 60

1 must 2 can't 3 be 4 as 5 appears 6 like 7 say 8 certain 9 wrong 10 seems to

For further practice of adjective suffixes: Vocabulary Builder 5G: page 119

3 (Possible answers)
-ful: truthful, useful; *-ive:* active, creative; *-al:* magical, fatal; *-able:* breakable, uncontrollable; *-ous:* dangerous, gorgeous; *-y:* salty, muddy; *-less:* helpless, lifeless

4 1 accidental 2 hopeful 3 disastrous 4 tasteless 5 windy, breezy 6 reliable, dependable

Exercise 5 2.17 page 60

1 Students' own answers.
2 4, 8
3 His general opinion is that arguments sometimes happen when you spend a lot of time with people and they aren't always serious. He thinks that arguing doesn't always cause problems, provided you get over it. But being unkind to your friends always damages a relationship.

Transcript

Both photos show a group of teenagers. In the first photo, it looks as if they're in a living room. In the second photo, I can't be certain but I think they're at a bowling alley. They must have gone there together for a game. The common theme is that the friends are not getting on well together. However, the two photos show different kinds of problems. In the first photo, two of the girls are excluding the third girl from their conversation. They seem to be sharing a private joke. The other girl probably feels left out. Judging by her expression, she isn't very happy about it. The second photo, on the other hand, shows an argument between the two boys. Arguments sometimes happen when you spend a lot of time with people. They aren't always serious. For example, in the second photo, it could be a fairly minor disagreement. One boy might have accused the other of cheating. I'm sure they'll forget about it later. I don't think arguing always causes problems, provided you get over it. But being unkind to your friends always damages a relationship.
For example, the two girls who are whispering in the first photo are behaving unkindly. They can't have thought about the other girl's feelings at all.

Exercise 6 2.17 page 60

1 must have 2 might have 3 can't have

Transcript

See exercise 5.

5H Writing

An opinion essay

Exercise 3 page 61

I think opposites do attract, but I don't think it lasts … However, our broad interests and personalities do resemble each other's …

For further practice of *do* / *did* for emphasis: Grammar Builder 5.5 page 135

1 1 You didn't get much sleep last night. Do go to bed early tonight! 2 It's a very important meeting. Do be on time! 3 I don't much like him, but I do like his brother. 4 We did enjoy the play. 5 I do like your new top! 6 Do be quiet, will you! 7 I didn't cook the meal, but I did do the washing up.

Exercise 4 page 61

1 I think opposites do attract, but I don't think it lasts as those different qualities that attracted you at first can annoy you later! For example, we both love sport, but we don't support the same teams. And although we're both sociable, Helen is more outgoing than me. So, in my view, although you may be attracted to a friend who is completely opposite to you, the best kind of friend is one that you have enough in common with, so that your friendship lasts a long time.
2 *However, and*
3 It is sometimes claimed that opposites attract when it comes to friendship.
4 It's in the details that we differ.

Exercise 5 page 61

1 Although online conversations are quick and easy, they are often superficial.
2 It is the non-verbal aspects of conversations that are really important.
3 It is believed that you only need a few close friends.
4 Even if people are busy, they can still keep in touch using social media.
5 It is said that (today) we live our lives through our phones.

3 Exam Skills Trainer

Exercise 1 page 62

1 **before** Henry is disabled; **after** overcome his difficulties 2 **before** a telepresence robot; **after** the world's museums already use these machines 3 **before** the gadget can be carried around; **after** He controls it 4 **before** drones enable him to explore from the air; **after** When he wants to go further afield 5 **before** access for PC users to a robot; **after** it is only a matter of time

Exercise 2 page 62

1 B 2 D 3 A 4 G 5 F

Exercise 3 page 62

A

Exercise 4 2.18 page 62

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T

Transcript

1 My dad invited a colleague and his family to lunch one weekend – they had a son who was the same age as me, but we didn't exchange a word the whole time they were there. The next day, I saw him at school – I was with my friends and he was with his. Suddenly, he threw a ball that hit me in the eye. A full-blown fight broke out between the two groups and someone went to get a teacher. While we were waiting outside the head teacher's office, we got talking and he said something that made me laugh. We've been great friends ever since.

2 I was in this drama group when a bunch of new people joined – this girl was one of them. It was pretty clear that I wasn't going to get a part in the next production, so, as I had a load of other things to do, I left the group. Then I found out she'd got the leading role. Some time later, someone in the group told me it was her birthday. Surprisingly enough, I got an invitation. As it happened, I was the only person from the group to turn up on the day. We started to chat and discovered we had quite a lot in common. And that was the beginning of a wonderful friendship!

3 It seems I've known my best friend for ever really. I can still remember the first time I saw him. It was Halloween, and everybody was dressed up – including me. I must have been about four years old at the time, so he would have been the same age. His mother was taking him around the houses doing trick or treat. Soon after that our parents became friends, so we saw each other every afternoon. We went through primary and secondary school together and now we know each other so well that people think we're brothers.

4 A new teacher made us all sit in alphabetical order, so that I was next to a girl that I'd never really spoken to before. I'd forgotten my pencil, so the girl lent me one of hers. When I went to give it back at the end of the day, I realised that I'd been chewing it and it looked awful. I told her I'd give it back to her the next day, then after school I bought a new pencil. Of course, she realised that it wasn't the pencil she'd lent me and just laughed when I explained what had happened. From that day on, we always sat together in class and we soon became best friends.

Exercise 5 page 63

1 C set phrase 2 D phrasal verb 3 A collocation

Exercise 6 page 63

1 C 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 A 6 D 7 B 8 A

Exercise 7 page 63

1 whereas (differences) 2 Both (similarities)
3 common (similarities) 4 rather than (differences)

Exercise 9 page 63

1 In 2 believe 3 Personally 4 mind

6 Health

Map of resources

6A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 64–65; Workbook, page 62
Photocopiable: 6A (Food science)

6B Grammar
Student's Book, page 66; Workbook, page 63
Photocopiable: 6B (The passive)

6C Listening
Student's Book, page 67; Workbook, page 64

6D Grammar
Student's Book, page 68; Workbook, page 65
Photocopiable: 6D (The passive: advanced structures)

6E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 69; Workbook, page 66

6F Reading
Student's Book, pages 70–71; Workbook, page 67

6G Speaking
Student's Book, page 72; Workbook, page 68

6H Writing
Student's Book, page 73; Workbook, page 69

Culture 6
Student's Book, page 113
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 6

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 6

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 70–71
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review
Exam Skills Trainer 3: Workbook, pages 72–73
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 6

6A Vocabulary

Food science

Exercise 2 page 64

1 wholegrain
2 pulses / poultry
3 poultry / pulses
4 Processed food
5 saturated fat
6 fizzy drinks
7 Dairy products

Exercise 3 page 65

(Possible answers)
additives baked beans, tinned chickpeas, biscuits, fizzy drinks
calcium cheese, milk, yoghurt
calories all foods
carbohydrate bread, cereal, pasta, potatoes, rice
cholesterol eggs, meat
fat meat, milk, nuts, oil, biscuits, cake
fibre apples, grapes, lemons, pears, asparagus, broccoli, cabbage, carrots, onions, peppers, tomatoes, bananas, sweetcorn, peas, mushrooms
mineral apples, bananas, grapes, lemons, pears, raspberries, asparagus, broccoli, cabbage, carrots, lettuce, onions, peppers, tomatoes, cheese, milk, yoghurt
nutrient all food
preservative baked beans, biscuits, long life milk, tinned chickpeas
protein cheese, milk, yoghurt, eggs, fish, meat, nuts
vitamins cheese, milk, yoghurt, fish, meat, nuts, oil, apples, bananas, grapes, lemons, pears, raspberries, asparagus, broccoli, cabbage, carrots, lettuce, onions, peppers, tomatoes

For further practice of food preparation vocabulary: Vocabulary Builder 6A page 120

1 1 Melt 2 crush 3 add 4 Beat 5 Whisk 6 Stir 7 pour

Exercise 5 page 65

1 burns 2 digest 3 contains 4 consume 5 boost 6 control 7 reduce 8 produce

Exercise 7 2.19 page 65

Speaker 1 D Speaker 2 E Speaker 3 A Speaker 4 C

Transcript

Speaker 1 OK, before tonight's run, I want to talk about what we should be eating when we're training for a marathon. It's essential to consume a lot of carbohydrates to boost our energy levels. These carbohydrates ought to be 'good' carbohydrates from whole grains, fresh and dried fruit and vegetables, so if you like fast food, it's time to give it up until after the race!

Speaker 2 Well, I've got coeliac disease, which means that I mustn't eat food that contains gluten if I don't want to get a bad stomach. Gluten is found in wheat, so I can't easily digest bread, cake, pastries, pizzas and things like that. Only 1% of the population has this problem, but because gluten-free diets have recently become fashionable, it's easy to find lots of gluten-free products, and I don't have to look hard for them in my local supermarket!

Speaker 3 In my opinion, diets are silly. There are so many strange ones where, for example, you don't eat any carbohydrates. If you want to lose weight, you must simply eat less and exercise more! I was very inactive for years and consumed large quantities of unhealthy processed food. Not surprisingly, I was overweight! Last summer, I started doing exercise and I visited my doctor who told me I had to reduce my intake of unhealthy meals. The result? I've lost seventeen kilos in six months!

Speaker 4 Technology in the form of smartwatches or apps for smartphones can help us control our weight by telling

us how many calories we have consumed during the day. We can also use these devices to scan food products when we go shopping to find out about the nutrients in them and where the ingredients were produced. This sort of thing is really going to help people be healthier.

Exercise 8 page 65

1 must, mustn't 2 has to, doesn't have to
3 had to 4 don't have to

6B Grammar

The passive

Exercise 3 page 66

a is (still) affected
b haven't been eliminated; have been (significantly) reduced
c were being killed
d will be challenged; will be transmitted
e is being improved
f were adopted
g had been taught

Exercise 4 page 66

1 be 2 past participle 3 subject
4 by 5 present continuous

Exercise 5 page 66

1 I have been examined by a doctor and (have been) told to rest at home. – 2
2 It was in the 19th century that anaesthetics were invented. – 3a
3 More advances in medicine are being made. – 4
4 The wound will be sewn now and the stitches will be removed next week. – 3b
5 The fact that many diseases could be cured by vitamins was discovered by Kazimierz Funk, a Polish scientist. – 2

For further practice of the passive: Grammar Builder 6.1 page 135

1
1 won't be released
2 hasn't been discovered
3 were planted
4 is being shown / was shown
5 are added / will be added
6 is being improved
7 was built
8 will be told

2
1 I was lent the money for the ticket by my brother.
2 We'll be allowed ten minutes to answer the questions.
3 The patient has been given some medicine (by the nurse).
4 Your parents are being taken to the airport by your uncle now.
5 We weren't given any information about the strike.
6 They were shown the way to the river by a local man.
7 He won't be forgiven if he keeps on lying.

Exercise 6 page 66

1 it is known as the Black Death
2 the plague was brought from Asia to Europe by rats / the plague was brought by rats from Asia to Europe
3 Millions of people were killed (by the disease).
4 Crops had been ruined by bad weather for years
5 thousands had been left hungry
6 The cities were being filled by frightened people
7 they were quickly infected by coughs and sneezes
8 We are still fascinated by this terrible event.
9 We are warned by journalists
10 the situation isn't being helped by ever-increasing air travel
11 we are given some protection by antibiotics / some protection is given to us by antibiotics
12 can we be saved

6C Listening

Keeping fit

Exercise 3 2.20 page 67

True: ... I was pedalling as hard as I could on this exercise bike.

Transcript

Phew! Give me a minute ... Well, that was the sound of me working very hard indeed. My heart was pumping, my lungs were bursting, and I could feel the lactic acid flooding into my legs and making my leg muscles ache. And all that was happening in the space of thirty seconds – while I was pedalling as hard as I could on this exercise bike.

Exercise 4 2.21 page 67

1 T 2 T 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F 7 T

Transcript

Phew ... That's better. My heart rate is already returning to normal, my breathing is getting easier and my leg muscles are relaxing. So, what was the point of all that puffing and panting, you might ask. Well, would you believe me if I told you that three of these thirty-second bursts of high-intensity exercise a couple of times a week is all it takes to keep you fit and healthy? Some experts believe that this approach to exercise is more beneficial than an hour spent jogging or working out in the gym.

This is actually how our ancestors used to exercise when they were hunting – a fast chase after an animal, followed by a short rest period before running again. And this High-Intensity Training, or HIT, has been used by athletes for a long time. But we ordinary people aren't really aware of why it might be better than longer, slower exercise.

When you push yourself briefly to the absolute limit, three things happen. Firstly, the number of mitochondria in your body is increased massively. Mitochondria are responsible for converting fat and sugar into energy. So you become fitter. They can only be increased with high-intensity training. Secondly, adrenalin is released – this is a fat-burning hormone – so you use up your body's stores of fat. Thirdly, your appetite isn't increased – unlike, say, after an hour's jog – so you don't feel you need to eat more calories afterwards. But what's the greatest advantage to this form of exercise? It's simply that it doesn't take very long! So there's no excuse for not doing it!

Exercise 5 2.22 page 67

1 pumping, aching 2 bursts, intensity
3 convert, energy 4 adrenalin, burns

Transcript

See exercises 3 and 4.

Exercise 7 2.23 page 67

1 b 2 b 3 a 4 b

Transcript

1 I'm fanatical about football. I love watching it, talking about it, but most of all, playing it. I can't remember the last time I missed a session or a match. I'm in the local football team which meets throughout the winter, and I'm also in the school team. The school football club gets together on Mondays and Wednesdays after lessons finish, and sometimes we take part in tournaments with other schools. We're quite good. Our local team is more serious and trains every Thursday night. Matches are often arranged for Saturdays against other local teams. It's supposed to be just for fun, but I'm actually very competitive. I'm not a brilliant player by any means, but what I lack in skill is compensated for by my sheer enthusiasm, dedication and commitment! I like us all working together to beat our opponents. We play hard, so we usually do really well in local tournaments.

2 I absolutely love the gym in my town and I attend *all* the fitness classes – they're free to members. So, I do aerobics on a Monday night. That's one of my real favourites because the instructor plays such cool music. Then there's body pump on Tuesdays. That's where we're lifting weights, and it's hard! On Thursdays, I do yoga, which is really good for stretching after doing weights, and on Saturday mornings, it's a spinning class, where you pedal on an exercise bike to music. That's the hardest work of all because you are given short bursts of high-intensity exercise, so your heart really pumps. Classes are great for me because I prefer exercising with other people around. It's much more motivating – and fun!

3 **A** Tanya, you are now our number one junior gymnast in the South-West. How old are you now?
B I'm fifteen.
A Just fifteen! And would you say that it's true that you have to be completely single-minded to excel in a particular sport?
B Yes, I think that's true. I do gymnastics nearly every day, and I've been doing so for years. I get up at 5.30 and go to the gym before school three times a week. After school, I'm usually back there again from 4.00 till 7.00.
A That's a lot of hours! How hard do you usually train?
B I push myself to the limit, and I'm usually covered in bruises! But I do try to avoid injury, though it's difficult if you are being taught a new move. You're going to make mistakes!
A What's your favourite piece of equipment?
B The floor! I love jumping and tumbling. And it's great to have music to move to. It really helps.
A And what are you training for in particular?
B I've just been given the news that I've been selected for the national junior squad. I'm thrilled! And if I train hard enough, I hope to be picked for the next Olympic team. That's a complete dream for me.

4 Me and my mates are completely mad about skateboarding. I've had a board for a good while now. We used to skateboard along the roads and in the local park, but a couple of years ago a skateboard park was built on the edge of town. It's pretty cool, and we try and get there whenever we can after school and at weekends. There are often quite a lot of skaters at the park. Some of the older guys are amazing, and we watch them to pick up new tricks. We also study YouTube clips and work out the moves. You can learn a lot from them. Mikey's the best in our group, and that's because he takes the most risks. He's already broken his wrist, but it didn't stop him. He turned up a couple of days later at the skate park with his arm in a plaster cast.

Exercise 8 2.23 page 67

1 but what I lack in skill (makes up for his deficiencies as a player)
2 Classes are great for me because I prefer exercising with other people around (explain how she chooses to exercise and why)
3 completely single-minded to excel in a particular sport (dedication to her sport)
4 we watch them to pick up new tricks (improve by copying others)

Transcript

See exercise 7.

Exercise 9 page 67

1 play 2 push 3 do 4 go 5 pedal 6 be 7 lift
8 attend 9 beat 10 keep

For further practice of fitness idioms: Vocabulary Builder 6C page 120

2 1 be in good / bad shape
2 look / be under the weather
3 get back into shape 4 go down with something
5 look the picture of health 6 be on the mend
7 have a new lease of life 8 be fighting fit

3 1 look the picture of health 2 under the weather
3 bad shape 4 get back into shape
5 am on the mend 6 going down
7 a new lease of life 8 fighting fit

6D Grammar

The passive: advanced structures

Exercise 3 page 68

1 which doesn't have to be consumed as water; serious health problems can be caused by obesity; your sleep might be disturbed
2 While nobody likes being woken up
3 a … it was thought that something terrible would happen to them. It is often reported that serious health problems can be caused by obesity.
b Waking a sleepwalker was once widely believed to be dangerous … This myth is thought to have been started by the bottled water industry. … staying in bed too long is thought to make you feel more tired!

Exercise 4 page 68
1 has just been reported – 3a
2 don't remember being told – 2
3 should have been given – 1
4 wants to be criticised – 2
5 is / was rumoured to have lost – 3b
6 must only be taken – 1

For further practice of advanced passive structures: Grammar Builder 6.2 page 136

1 1 is thought to have escaped in a stolen car
2 is known to be bad for you
3 was thought that the painting was an original Picasso
4 is reported to have caused extensive damage
5 is said to have caused the floods
6 weren't believed to be serious
7 is said that some fruits are 'superfoods'

2 1 being burned 2 to be awarded 3 to be kept
4 have been sold 5 be turned off 6 being taught
7 to be interviewed

Exercise 5 page 68
1 has been known for years that too much salt is unhealthy
2 health myths to be believed
3 ought to have been checked carefully
4 being told how much exercise to do
5 be blamed for overweight children
6 to have slept for ten hours every night

Exercise 6 page 68
(Possible answers)
It is often thought that vegetables that are frozen aren't as good for you as fresh ones. However, frozen vegetables are frozen as soon as they are picked, so they can't lose any of their nutritional value.
It's sometimes said that any type of brown bread is better for you than white bread. However, some brown bread has the same ingredients as white bread, but with brown food colouring.
A burger is believed to contain more calories than a milkshake, but it depends what the milkshake is made of. Some milkshakes include ingredients such as ice cream and marshmallows which contain a lot of calories.

6E Word Skills

Compound adjectives

Exercise 2 page 69
It could help students by improving a variety of skills.

Exercise 3 page 69
1 broad-based 2 half-hearted 3 bleary-eyed
4 breathtaking 5 thought-provoking 6 mind-blowing
7 record-breaking 8 highly respected 9 far-fetched
10 well-known

Exercise 4 page 69
1 (single-minded) e 2 (second-hand) d 3 (light-hearted) g 4 (straighforward) b 5 (good-looking) a
6 (upcoming) c 7 (high-spirited) f

Exercise 5 page 69
English-speaking, light-hearted, old-fashioned, record-breaking

Exercise 6 page 69
1 minded 2 written 3 saving 4 watering
5 reaching 6 populated

6F Reading

Junk food

Exercise 2 page 70
(Possible answers)
Zack appeared on a TV programme that offered help to people with a food addiction. He appears to have overcome his addiction.
Stacy became seriously ill and was admitted to hospital. While she is aware of the dangers of her situation, she still hasn't managed to change her diet.
Hanna lost her job, went to see a psychologist, had hypnosis and overcame her addiction.

Exercise 3 page 70
1 B 2 E 3 A 4 D

Exercise 4 page 71
1 T 2 F He ate a fish dish while his brother ate a pizza in front of him. 3 T 4 F She is starting to realise the seriousness of the situation but still can't eat anything but chicken nuggets. 5 T 6 T

Exercise 5 page 71
1 flavour 2 dish 3 amount 4 slice 5 diet
6 leftovers 7 portions 8 menu

6G Speaking

Role-play

Exercise 2 page 72
Illnesses chest infection, flu, virus, (Also: asthma, chicken pox, gastroenteritis, heart disease, measles, mumps, tonsillitis, heart disease, malaria)
Injuries bruise, cut, fracture, insect sting, nose bleed, sprain, wound (Also: graze)
Symptoms ache, be congested, cough, feel dizzy, feel fatigued, heartburn, feel nauseous, rash, sore throat, feel stiff, be swollen, temperature (Also: runny nose, diarrhoea)

Exercise 4 2.25 page 72
The doctor says she has a virus.
The speakers use *cough, sore throat, ache* (verb, not noun), *temperature, feel dizzy* and *be swollen*.

Transcript
Examiner So, how can I help you?
Candidate I don't feel very well, doctor.
Examiner What seems to be the matter?
Candidate Well, I've got a cough and a really sore throat, and I ache all over.
Examiner Have you got a temperature too?
Candidate I don't think so. But I feel a bit dizzy.

Examiner Let me have a look at your throat. Hmm. How long have you been feeling like this?
Candidate For a couple of days, I think. Yes, my throat started to hurt on Tuesday.
Examiner Your throat does look extremely swollen. Are you having any difficulty swallowing?
Candidate I'm afraid I didn't quite catch that. Would you mind saying it again?
Examiner Can you swallow – can you still eat and drink?
Candidate Oh, I see. Well, just about, but it is very painful.
Examiner And have you been taking anything for it?
Candidate Yes, I tried taking some cough medicine, but it didn't really seem to help.
Examiner Well, you have a virus. I think you need something stronger than cough medicine.
Candidate What do you suggest?
Examiner Are you allergic to any medicines?
Candidate Sorry, what do you mean by *allergic*?
Examiner Do you have an allergy to any medicines – are there any that you can't take?
Candidate Oh, I see. No, I don't think so.
Examiner In that case, I'll write you a prescription for some tablets. They're painkillers. They are also anti-inflammatories.
Candidate That sounds like a better idea.
Examiner And you need to rest, or you may get an infection. You should drink lots of liquids too.
Candidate Yes, doctor. And how often do I take them?
Examiner You need to take two tablets every four hours.
Candidate How long for?
Examiner For the next three days. If it doesn't get better, come back and see me.
Candidate Thank you, doctor.

Exercise 5 page 72

(Possible answers)
You could treat ... heartburn with antacid.; a chest infection / a cut / a wound with antibiotics.; an insect sting / a rash / something swollen with antihistamine.; an insect sting / a sprain / feeling stiff / something swollen with anti-inflammatories.; a cut / an insect sting / a wound with antiseptic cream.; a cut / a fracture / a sprain / a wound with a bandage.; a cough with cough medicine.; a chest infection / a fever / flu / a temperature / a virus with lots of liquids.; an ache / a fracture / a sprain with painkillers.; a chest infection / feeling dizzy / feeling fatigued / a fever / flu with rest.; an ache / a chest infection / feeling dizzy / flu / a temperature with a tablet.; a sore throat with throat sweets. You could diagnose a chest infection / a fracture with an X-ray.

Exercise 6 2.25 page 72

The treatments discussed are painkillers that are also anti-inflammatories. The doctor recommends rest and drinking lots of liquids.

Transcript
See exercise 4.

Exercise 7 2.26 page 72

chest infection; nearly a week; antibiotics; one tablet three times a day

Transcript
Examiner So, how can I help you?
Candidate I haven't been feeling very well, doctor.
Examiner What symptoms have you got?
Candidate Well, I cough a lot and it hurts.
Examiner Have you got a temperature too?
Candidate Well, I've been feeling quite hot lately and I've had a headache.
Examiner Let's see ... Hmm. Yes, you do have a slight temperature. How long have you been feeling like this?
Candidate Nearly a week now, but it got worse yesterday.
Examiner Let me listen to your breathing ... Yes, you have a chest infection.
Candidate What do you mean by *chest*? Is that the same as *lungs*?
Examiner Yes, you have an infection in your lungs. It affects your breathing.
Candidate Oh, I see.
Examiner You'll need some antibiotics.
Candidate Is that something like penicillin? I'm not really sure about that.
Examiner Penicillin is one type of antibiotic. Are you allergic to penicillin?
Candidate To be honest, I'd prefer to take another antibiotic. Penicillin makes me feel a bit nauseous.
Examiner No problem. I'll write you a prescription for a different antibiotic.
Candidate OK. How often do I take it?
Examiner Take one tablet three times a day.
Candidate How long for?
Examiner A week, until they are finished. And you need to rest and drink lots of liquids.
Candidate OK. Thank you very much, doctor.

Exercise 8 page 72

1 think 2 didn't 3 mind 4 mean
5 something 6 same as

Exercise 9 2.26 page 72

1 The student asks the examiner to explain *chest infection* and *antibiotics*.
2 What do you mean by *chest*?
Is that the same as *lungs*?
Is that something like penicillin?

Transcript
See exercise 7.

6H Writing

An article

Exercise 1 page 73

(Possible answers)
1 biscuits, cakes, chocolate, sweets, ice cream, candyfloss
2 Sugar contains a lot of calories. It can cause tooth decay and it makes you gain weight.

Exercise 4 page 73

and, but, however, moreover, therefore, also, consequently, furthermore, so that, although

Exercise 5 page 73

Obviously, Surprisingly, Consequently, Ideally, Personally

7 Tall stories

Map of resources

7A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 74–75; Workbook, page 74
Photocopiable: 7A (Truth and lies)

7B Grammar
Student's Book, page 76; Workbook, page 75
Photocopiable: 7B (Reported speech)

7C Listening
Student's Book, page 77; Workbook, page 76

7D Grammar
Student's Book, page 78; Workbook, page 77
Photocopiable: 7D (Reporting verbs)

7E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 79; Workbook, page 78

7F Reading
Student's Book, pages 80–81; Workbook, page 79

7G Speaking
Student's Book, page 82; Workbook, page 80

7H Writing
Student's Book, page 83; Workbook, page 81

Culture 7
Student's Book, page 114
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 7

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 7

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 82–83
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review
Exam Skills Trainer 4: Student's Book, pages 84–85
Cumulative Review I–7: Workbook, pages 114–115
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 7

7A Vocabulary

Truth and lies

Exercise 1 page 74

(Possible answers)
In photo A, the picture on the right has been changed to make the woman look more attractive. – dishonest
In photo B, the student is cheating in an exam or test. – dishonest
In photo C, the man is swearing to tell the truth in court. – honest

Exercise 2 page 74

(Possible answers)
Photo A deceive sb, disguise (the fact that …), distort, exaggerate, fool sb, mislead sb, pass sth/sb off as, photoshop (a picture / an image, etc.)
Photo B cheat, deceive sb, fool sb, mislead sb, pass sth/sb off as
Photo C own up (to sth), reveal, swear that / to do sth, tell the truth

Exercise 3 page 75

1 deceiving 2 own up to 3 lie 4 mislead
5 pass it off 6 fabricated 7 reveal 8 tell
9 exaggerates 10 fooling

Exercise 5 page 75

Honesty truthful, original, straight, trustworthy
Dishonesty fake, devious

Exercise 6 page 75

Honesty direct, honest, open
Dishonesty biased, dishonest, hypocritical, manipulative, unethical

Exercise 7 page 75

(Possible answers)
1 biased / dishonest 2 hypocritical
3 direct / truthful / honest 4 manipulative / devious
5 ethical

Exercise 9 3.02 page 75

1 At the dentist. The man was expecting to hear a lie: 'You won't feel a thing.'
2 A mother and son arguing about the son's untidy bedroom; an hour earlier the son had promised he would tidy his room, but he hadn't.
3 Two classmates talking after class. One of the boys says the money is his, but he probably found it on the floor and kept it / stole it.
4 In the classroom; a teacher is collecting homework. A student says she couldn't print off her homework, but she probably hasn't done it.
5 A girl making up an excuse about why she can't go out with a boy.

Transcript

1 There I was, lying on my back, looking up at that big light which they put over your face, and she said those words which they always tell you. You know, she leaned over and said, 'You won't feel a thing, I promise.' When I heard those words I thought, 'Here we go, this is going to be painful!' But, actually, much to my amazement, it wasn't – and before I knew it, I was sitting up, cleaning my mouth with some water, and I hadn't felt a thing! She's the only one who hasn't left me with a sore mouth!
2 **Mum** Sean, could you please tidy up your bedroom and make your bed? Isn't there a place for all these things, for example, your wardrobe? The floor is definitely not the place where they should be!
Sean Yeah, yeah … Let me just finish this game!

Mum Look, that's what you promised me an hour ago! I've asked you three times now and if I have to ask you again, you won't be playing any more video games this weekend!
Sean OK … OK! There's no need to get angry!
Mum I wouldn't be if you'd done what I asked you to do earlier!

3 **Jake** Hi, Max.
Max Hi, Jake. Look, I've just spoken to a girl whose best friend lost some money in this classroom. Didn't you say you had found £20 on the floor?
Jake Me? You must be joking! I didn't find anything!
Max Are you sure? But you said you did. And I thought I saw you with some money in your hand at the end of English class.
Jake That was my own. I do have my own money, you know!
Max But you wanted to borrow some money from me earlier.
Jake Oh … yeah … Er, well, I forgot that I had some on me.
Max So the £20 was definitely yours? I'm not sure …
Jake Just leave me alone, will you? That money was mine, OK?

4 **Mr Williams** Good morning, everybody! Right, before we start, I want you to hand in your work.
Jessica Er … Mr Williams … Mr Williams …
Mr Williams Yes, Jessica?
Jessica I had a bit of a problem with my printer this morning. It had run out of ink and I wasn't able to print out the exercises.
Mr Williams Well, Jessica, you have done the homework, haven't you?
Jessica Yes, of course.
Mr Williams Then you can email it to me the moment you get home this evening, can't you?

5 **Tom** Hi, Kate!
Kate Hi, Tom. Listen, erm … about tonight.
Tom Yes, I'm really looking forward to it.
Kate Yeah … well, something unexpected has come up, and I'm afraid that I'm not going to be able to come. I really am sorry …
Tom Oh, no, that is disappointing. What is it?
Kate Oh, a family event. Nothing important, but it's something which I just can't get out of.
Tom Well, how about Saturday? The film is still on at the cinema until Sunday, so we could go then.
Kate I can't on Saturday. I'm going out with my friend Emma.
Tom Perhaps some other time, then?
Kate Yes, some other time. We can talk about it when we see each other at school.
Tom OK, let's do that. Bye.
Kate Bye, Tom … and sorry!

Exercise 10 3.02 page 75

(Possible answers)
2 … (which / that) he has left on the floor.
3 … whose best friend has lost some money.
4 … (why / that) she isn't able to hand in her homework.
5 … (which / that) she can't get out of.

Transcript
See exercise 9.

7B Grammar

Reported speech

Exercise 1 page 76

1 I'll take you out for your birthday to the new pizza place.
2 My sister had an accident last night.
3 I won't be able to see you.
4 I don't believe you.
5 You've been avoiding me for ages.
6 You shouldn't call John any more.
7 He's a liar and he's let you down too many times.

Exercise 2 page 76

1 'd take; had had ; wouldn't be able to see; didn't believe; 'd been avoiding
2 My mum says he's a liar and he's let me down too many times.
3 My dad said that I shouldn't call John any more.
4 (1) me – you; my birthday – your birthday
(2) his sister – my sister; the night before – last night
(3) he – I; see you – see me (4) believe him – believe you (5) he'd been – you've been (6) I shouldn't – you shouldn't (7) he's let me down – he's let you down

For further practice of reported speech, go to: Grammar Builder 7.1 page 136

1 1 'I've been studying since lunchtime.'
2 'My aunt's been feeling unwell since last week.'
3 'I'd like to go to Africa one day.'
4 'I learned to ski last winter.'
5 'I don't want to go to the match because I'm going to visit my cousins.'
6 'I'll bring my sister to the party.'
7 'I'm not going swimming with you tomorrow.'

Exercise 3 page 76

She said that she didn't think he'd noticed her. She said that he had been talking to the girl from the pizza café. She said that she had heard them arrange to meet the next / following day. She said that they had been chatting on Facebook too. She said that Daisy must / had to speak to him about it that night. She said that everyone knew he was deceiving her.

Exercise 4 page 76

1 Lee tells me that he's scared of heights.
2 Simon said that I should always tell the truth.
3 Alison says that she's never believed in ghosts.
4 Pete has said that he'll be watching TV this evening.
5 May told me that I might see her at the concert.
6 Jim says that he won't be late tomorrow.

Exercise 5 page 76

1 asked me what I was looking for
2 us who didn't understand the exercise
3 whether he knew you and your brother
4 him if / whether he knew where the station was
5 Don if / whether he had been to Italy
6 which bus he needed for the town centre

For further practice of reported questions, go to: Grammar Builder 7.2 page 137

1 1 if I'd spoken to Fatima recently
2 if / whether I was going to the café later
3 me whether I could speak Greek and I said I could
4 if the bag was mine
5 me when the festival started
6 if / whether I'd been watching her
7 if / whether I'd call her later and I said I would

Exercise 6 page 76

1 He asked us what time the café would open the next day.
2 Pam asked me whether she should call me a taxi.
3 Fran told us not to believe anything Jim said.
4 I told her that we must / had to get to the airport on time.
5 Tony asked me who I had seen at the club the night before.

7C Listening

Urban legends

Exercise 2 3.03 page 77

(Possible answer)
A woman was driving home at night in a remote part of America when she had to stop for petrol. She had to get out of her car because there seemed to be a problem with her banknote. It turned out that there wasn't a problem, but the attendant wanted her to get out of the car because he had seen a man with an axe in the back of her car.

Transcript

Ian Right, guys. You all like horror stories, don't you? I've got a great one!
Max A horror story. Great, Ian. They're so interesting.
Jill Oh shush, Max. Fantastic! How scary is it?
Max Don't shush me, Jill!
Caro Well, I think I like horror stories …
Ian Don't worry, Caro. You know what an urban legend is?
Max Of course we do. Anyway, you're not supposed to say it's an urban legend. You're supposed to say 'this happened to a friend of a friend of mine' like it was true.
Ian Well, whatever. I'm not saying it isn't true. It could easily be true.
Caro I hope it isn't true …
Jill Come on. Let's just hear it!
Ian OK. I think this story comes from the American Midwest where you drive for miles on open roads without seeing anyone. Well, there was a young woman driving home alone across open country. It was dark and rainy, and it was getting late …
Caro Oh, dear. I don't like this story already.
Max Oh, yeah. It's so scary …
Jill I quite like this kind of story …
Ian Guys, I haven't even started yet! Anyway, she realised that she'd have to stop for petrol soon if she didn't want to start walking. But there hadn't been anywhere for miles and miles. But, luckily, she came across a little petrol station a bit further down the road. It was one of those creepy, old-fashioned American petrol stations, the kind with an attendant who comes out to pump the petrol, and something about it made her feel really uncomfortable, and she didn't want to stop. But she knew that she couldn't get much further without refuelling, so she reluctantly pulled into the petrol station and asked the attendant to fill up the tank.
Jill I bet the attendant's a murderer!
Caro Oh, no! She shouldn't get out of the car.
Ian I'll continue, shall I? Anyway, the attendant seemed nervous as he filled up her petrol tank, but eventually he finished the job and came over to the driver's side to get the payment. She gave him a $50 bank note. He examined it carefully, then told her that it was a forgery. At this point, she wasn't just uncomfortable, but really scared. The attendant explained that he would have to take her back to his office and call his manager because the forged bank note would have to be reported. Once he had convinced her to come with him, he explained that there wasn't actually a problem with the money. He'd needed to get her out of the car because there was a man with an axe hiding in the back seat.

Exercise 3 3.04 page 77

1 sarcastic 2 enthusiastic 3 patient 4 nervous

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 4 3.05 page 77

Transcript

See Student's Book page 77.

Exercise 5 3.06 page 77

1 rule 1 (statement) 2 rule 2 (unsure) 3 rule 3 (sarcastic)
4 rule 2 (unsure) 5 rule 2 (nervous)

Transcript

See Student's Book page 77.

Exercise 6 3.07 page 77

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 b

Transcript

See Student's Book page 77.

Exercise 7 3.08 page 77

1 c 2 a 3 d 4 c 5 d

Transcript

Interviewer Good morning and welcome to the programme. Now, we all like a good horror story. Myths and legends have been around since the first humans sat around a campfire and told stories to each other. In the studio today we have an English professor, author and specialist in classical literature by day, who has, out of hours, made it her passion to collect and put on paper as many urban legends as she can. Welcome to the studio, Dr Miriam Webster.
Dr Webster Thank you.
Interviewer Dr Webster, I *think* I know what an urban legend is …
Dr Webster Well, the strict definition is quite complicated. Urban legends are generally stories that are said to be true and passed from individual to individual, usually orally. They invariably happen to someone other than the storyteller, usually the friend of a friend. Typically, these stories describe humiliating, humorous, terrifying, or supernatural events. Sometimes there's an implied moral message, like 'be careful, or the same horrible thing might happen to you!'
Interviewer Yes, urban legends are *so* delightful, aren't they? Full of positivity and joy … So, where do we get them from?

Dr Webster Well, they're a type of folklore – defined as the beliefs, stories and traditions of ordinary people, or 'folk' – so one way of differentiating them is by examining where they come from and how they travel. Legends arise spontaneously and can rarely be traced to a single point of origin. And again, they're usually spread by word-of-mouth and only in rare cases through mass media. Because they end up being repeated by many different people, the stories tend to change over time. So, no two versions of an urban legend are ever exactly alike; there can be as many variations as there are tellers of the tale.
Interviewer Do urban legends ever turn out to be true?
Dr Webster Occasionally they do.
Interviewer But being true disqualifies a story from being an urban legend.
Dr Webster Remember, urban legends aren't defined as false stories; they're defined as stories alleged to be true in the absence of actual knowledge or evidence. True or not, as long as a story continues to be passed on as factual by folk who don't really know the facts, it's an urban legend.
Interviewer And of course, people will believe anything.
Dr Webster Maybe our brains are hard-wired in some way to be susceptible to well-told stories. It does seem to be the case that we have a built-in tendency to interpret life in narrative terms. Maybe it's a psychological survival tactic. Perhaps one of the ways we cope is by turning the things that scare us, embarrass us, or make us laugh into stories. We're charmed by them for the same reasons we're charmed by Hollywood films: good guys win, bad guys are punished, everything tidied up at the end.
Interviewer And that's also the end of our programme. Thank you, Dr Webster.

7D Grammar

Reporting verbs

Exercise 1 page 78

1 He has been accused of using social media to steal money from people.
2 identity theft; selling goods online that don't exist

Exercise 2 3.09 page 78

1 … convinced them that they had won a free gift.
2 … admitted that the free gifts didn't exist.
3 … has denied that he actually stole any money.
4 … claimed that he'd been trying to raise awareness of the dangers of giving away their details.
5 Police have warned the public never to make personal or financial information available to others …

Transcript

1 Congratulations! You've won a free gift.
2 The free gifts were a hoax.
3 I didn't actually steal any money.
4 I wanted to make people understand the dangers of cybercrime.
5 Never make personal or financial information available to others.

For further practice of reporting verbs, go to: Grammar Builder 7.3 page 137

1 1 Jim explained that he couldn't afford to go out because he had spent all his money.
2 Will promised Julia (that) he wouldn't forget her birthday again.
3 Pablo insisted (that) he had locked the door behind him.
4 Laura announced (that) she had just won first prize in a competition.
5 Oscar complained to the assistant that all of the shirts were too big for him.
6 Jenny warned me (that) there was going to be a test the next day.
7 Jim denied that he had told anyone what he had seen. / Jim denied having told / telling anyone what he had seen.

Exercise 3 page 78

2 Dan explained to Mia that he was late because he had missed the bus.
3 Pete insisted that I was wrong.
4 Jen announced that she had passed all her exams.
5 Pablo promised that he would be there on time.
6 Jack denied that he had taken my keys. / Jack denied having taken / taking my keys.

For further practice of other reporting structures: Grammar Builder 7.4 page 138

1 1 Pat refused to listen to my explanation.
2 They advised me to go to hospital immediately.
3 We congratulated him on passing his driving test.
4 She suggested having a picnic in the park. / She suggested (that) we have a picnic in the park.
5 I confessed to losing my sister's new scarf.
6 He invited us to go to his party that Friday.
7 I begged him not to tell anyone my secret.
8 Oli insisted on paying me half the taxi fare.
9 He encouraged us to keep trying.
10 Fiona threatened to call the police.

2 1 of dropping 2 for making 3 to study 4 for losing 5 to leave 6 should play / play 7 spending 8 should visit / visit

Exercise 4 3.10 page 78

1 refused 2 advised 3 suggested 4 boasted 5 blamed 6 requested

Transcript

1 **Man** You really have to make up your mind what you want to do when you leave school.
Girl I'm not going to do that until I get my exam results.
2 **Girl** Did you go to the cinema last night, then?
Boy Yes, but if I were you, I wouldn't bother seeing the same film. It wasn't that great.
3 **Boy** Have you had enough to eat?
Girl Actually, I'm still a bit hungry. Why don't we get some more chips?
4 **Girl** Who do you think has the most Facebook friends?
Boy Oh, it's definitely me; I'm sure I've got loads more than anyone else.

5 Boy Oh, no, look – there goes the bus!
Girl Well, it's your fault we missed it; you took so long getting ready to go out!
6 Man Sorry to bother you, but I wonder if you could keep the noise down a bit?
Girl Sorry, I hadn't realised we were being so loud.

Exercise 5 3.11 page 78

2 She congratulated him on passing his driving test.
3 He reminded her to take the book back to the library.
4 He denied taking his mobile phone.
5 He proposed that they (should) end the meeting early (so that everyone could get home).
6 She apologised for not doing the homework.
7 He agreed to help her with her bags.
8 She threatened to tell the teacher.
9 He encouraged her to apply for the (summer) job.
10 She confessed to throwing away her/the magazines.
11 He accused her of breaking the chair.
12 He recommended that she (should) buy the (new) video game.

Transcript

1 Girl Hi, Alfie. What are you doing this afternoon?
Boy Err, nothing much.
Girl Why don't you come to the park with us, then?
2 Boy Hey, did you know I passed my driving test last week?
Girl Really? That's brilliant news – well done, you!
3 Man You won't forget to take that book back to the library, will you?
Girl No, I won't!
4 Boy 1 Has anyone taken my mobile phone? I can't find it anywhere.
Boy 2 Well, I haven't taken it – I've been using my own.
5 Woman I've just heard that there's a really bad storm on the way.
Man In that case, I think we should end the meeting early so that everyone can get home.
6 Man Tina, can you tell me the answer to question ten, please?
Girl I'm really sorry, but I haven't done the homework.
7 Woman Excuse me, I was wondering if you'd mind helping me with my bags?
Man Yes, of course – here, let me take them for you.
8 Boy I haven't had time to revise properly, so I'm going to take this dictionary into the exam.
Girl You can't do that – it's cheating! If you do, I'll tell the teacher.
9 Girl There's an advert here for a summer job working with children. Do you think I should apply for it?
Boy Definitely. I think that's a great idea.
10 Girl Mum, do you know what's happened to my magazines?
Woman Oh, dear, I'm afraid I threw them away by mistake!
11 Girl What makes you think it was me who broke the chair?
Man Well, *someone* did and you were in the room at the time.
12 Girl Have you seen that new video game that's just come out?
Boy Yes, and it's brilliant – you really ought to buy it!

7E Word Skills

Nouns and dependent prepositions

For further practice of nouns and dependent prepositions: Grammar Builder 7.5 page 138

1 1 to 2 with 3 in 4 for 5 for 6 on 7 in 8 for

Exercise 3 page 79

addiction to
demand for
difference between
evidence of
existence of
increase in
interest in
need for
obsession with

Exercise 4 page 79

1 of, for
2 The preposition is given in brackets and in example sentences.

Exercise 5 page 79

dependence, effect + on
belief, rise + in
preference, reason + for
objection, solution + to

Exercise 6 page 79

1 a in b to 2 a with b for
3 a for b in 4 a of b in

Exercise 7 page 79

1 in 2 to 3 with 4 of 5 between 6 for 7 on

For further practice of nouns formed from phrasal verbs: Vocabulary Builder 7E: page 120

1 1 sell-out
2 crackdown
3 stop offs
4 rip-off
5 write-off
6 cut-backs

7F Reading

Media wars

Exercise 1 page 80

1 (Possible answer) The social media are websites or apps, e.g. Twitter, Facebook, and YouTube, which users can use to communicate with each other by adding information, messages, images, etc. It is two-way communication, whereas mass media are a one-way communication.

Exercise 2 page 80

a lie about a five-week trip around South-East Asia;
a lie about a sixteen-year-old football star from Moldova

Exercise 3 page 80

1 Paragraph 1: Multiple-choice questions always follow the order of the text.
2 The answer is c. (a threat = *their new rival* in the text)

Exercise 4 page 80

1 c 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 b

Exercise 6 page 80

1 let on 2 zoom in on 3 take in 4 make out
5 set up 6 hole up 7 find out 8 play on

For further practice of media headlines: Vocabulary Builder 7F: page 120

2
1 criticises
2 cut
3 be in charge of
4 request
5 resign
6 promises

7G Speaking

Presentation

Exercise 2 page 82

In news report 1, the thief used his victim's computer to check his Facebook account and forgot to log out, so he was easy to catch.
In news report 2, the fugitive added a Facebook friend who used to be a Justice Department official.
Story 2 matches the photo.

Exercise 3 3.13 page 82

Transcript

It's certainly true that social media can cause problems for people – even if they aren't exactly crimes. So, for instance, somebody might feel very unhappy because a photograph of them is posted online without their permission. It might even get unkind comments – which is a kind of cyber-bullying. I'm not sure if it's against the law but it certainly causes a lot of unhappiness.
But social media can also be used to fight against crimes, particularly when it comes to sharing information. The kind of thing I'm talking about is when somebody has a bike stolen and puts a message on Facebook or Twitter asking for help. People then share that message online and quite often, it is seen by hundreds or even thousands of people. It often has a positive result. Social media can also help reduce crime in other ways, particularly when it is used by the criminals themselves. One example of that would be when a criminal posts a photo of himself with something that he has stolen. It sounds unbelievable, but actually it happens quite often. I suppose they imagine only their friends will see it, but they're wrong. These days, the police use social media a lot when they're trying to solve crimes because it's such an easy way to look for evidence.

Exercise 4 3.13 page 82

1 People can feel unhappy if a photograph of them is posted online without their permission, for instance, ...
2 somebody has a bike stolen and puts a message on Facebook or Twitter asking for help, The kind of thing I'm talking about is ...
3 a criminal posts a photo of himself with something that he has stolen, One example of that would be ...

Transcript

See exercise 3.

7H Writing

A story

Exercise 1 page 83

A white lie is a harmless or small lie that you tell to avoid upsetting someone.

Exercise 3 page 83

1 first person
2 four different days, yes
3 two days later, the following weekend, by the time, the next day
4 nervous, embarrassed, sympathetic

For further practice of nominal clauses with *What*, go to: Grammar Builder 7.6 page 139

1 What you need to remember is the fact that attendance is compulsory.
2 What you must do first is to fill in this form / fill this form in.
3 What visitors in Oxford love most are the colleges.
4 What I have always found astonishing is how enormous the universe is.
5 What nobody realises is how addictive social networks are.
6 What caused the conflict we will probably never know.

Exercise 4 page 83

1 What I should have said is that I'm terrified of them.
2 What made the situation worse was the fact that I couldn't go back the way we'd come, so I had to use the emergency exit.
3 What she couldn't understand was why I had lied in the first place – and neither can I!

Exercise 5 page 83

1 What made me angry was his arrogance.
2 What I found really upsetting was the fact that Harry lied to me.
3 What I've always admired is her honesty.
4 What surprised me was the fact that he posted the photo online.
5 What she was trying to do was to make us feel better.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

4 Exam Skills Trainer

Exercise 1 page 84

1 fatal
2 prosthetic
3 trigger

Exercise 2 page 84

1 C 2 A 3 A 4 B 5 C 6 B

Exercise 3 page 84

B

A is incorrect because the text says that people do this gesture so that they do get excused.

C is incorrect because *trouble* is used with the verb *get into* in this case, not *be*. It needs the preposition *to*.

Exercise 4 3.14 page 85

1 body language
2 eyes
3 true story
4 died
5 photo
6 inheritance

Transcript

1 Trained lie-spotters get to the bottom of the truth 90% of the time, and that's because we all make the same mistakes; we all use the same techniques. Let's look at body language, for example. With body language, you've really got to just throw your assumptions out of the window and listen to the science. Because we all think that liars can't keep still. Well, guess what? They're known to freeze their upper bodies when they're lying. We think liars won't look you in the eye. It's actually the opposite. They look you in the eye just a little bit too much to compensate for that myth. We think warmth and smiles convey honesty and sincerity, but a trained lie-spotter can spot a fake smile a mile away. You can consciously contract the muscles in your cheeks, but the real smile is in the eyes: the lines at the corner of your eyes cannot be consciously contracted.

2 **Jane** I saw a really good film last night – *Dallas Buyers Club*. Have you seen it?
Alan Yes, I saw it at the cinema when it came out.
Jane I couldn't believe it when I found out it was a true story.
Alan Yeah, I know. It came as a big surprise to me too. But the guy – er, what was his name?
Jane Woodroof. Ron Woodroof.
Alan That's right. I thought he was really lucky to live for so long after his diagnosis. Didn't you?
Jane Yes, it was seven years. And he didn't seem the type to read up on all the treatments, did he? I mean, I don't think he'd had much of an education or anything.
Alan Hmm, I don't know about that, but he certainly made a fortune out of all the medicine he got for people.
Jane True, but at some point, he changed, didn't he? I'm sure he did it in the end because he wanted to help them.
Alan Mmm. I guess he turned out to be quite a good guy, after all.
Jane Yeah. I was pretty sad when they said he'd died.
Alan Me too.

3 **Newsreader** A woman from Essex has been tricked into giving £165,000 to a man she has never seen. Sue Tollefsen met the conman, who called himself Glenn Vanslyke, on the dating website Plenty of Fish. She was immediately attracted to the handsome grey-haired man in the photo and completely taken in by his stories of a wife he had nursed through terminal cancer, and a daughter he had raised as a single father. Mrs Tollefsen thought nothing of it when the man started asking for small sums of money, because he told her he would pay her back when his father's inheritance came through. Sadly for Mrs Tollefsen, neither Mr Vanslyke nor his inheritance existed, and she is now heavily in debt. Now, she hopes her story will serve as a warning for others.

Exercise 5 page 85

1 in 2 off 3 up 4 for 5 up

Exercise 6 page 85

1 with 2 under 3 on 4 between 5 off 6 by 7 in 8 been

Exercise 9 page 85

a, c, d, f

8 Change the world

Map of resources

8A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 86–87; Workbook, page 84
Photocopiable: 8A (Protest)

8B Grammar
Student's Book, page 88; Workbook, page 85
Photocopiable: 8B (Second and third conditional)

8C Listening
Student's Book, page 89; Workbook, page 86

8D Grammar
Student's Book, page 90; Workbook, page 87
Photocopiable: 8D (Mixed conditionals)

8E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 91; Workbook, page 88

8F Reading
Student's Book, pages 92–93; Workbook, page 89

8G Speaking
Student's Book, page 94; Workbook, page 90
Photocopiable: Functional Language Practice (Using written prompts to debate a subject)

8H Writing
Student's Book, page 95; Workbook, page 91

Culture 8
Student's Book, page 115
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 8

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 8

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 92–93
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Exam Skills Trainer 4: Workbook, pages 94–95
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 8

8A Vocabulary

Protest

Exercise 1 page 86

(Possible answers)
Photo A The men are demonstrating / protesting against the loss of UK jobs. The woman is signing a petition.
Photo B Some people are on a protest march. / People are demonstrating / protesting. Some people are holding up placards. The women at the front are shouting slogans.
Photo C Some people are holding a rally. The man in the foreground is saying something through a megaphone.

Exercise 3 page 86

1 corruption 2 censorship 3 immigration / unemployment 4 gender inequality 5 global warming / homelessness 6 terrorism 7 unemployment

Exercise 5 page 87

1 sign 2 vote 3 support 4 organise 5 wrote 6 campaigns 7 demonstrates 8 stand

Exercise 6 3.15 page 87

1 signing a petition 2 an interview 3 a benefit concert 4 a demonstration 5 a political advert

Transcript

1 **A** Excuse me. We're students who want the council to build more cycle lanes, and we're collecting signatures.
B Er … OK … I don't cycle myself, but my eldest son, who is a member of a cycling club, cycles everywhere. I usually walk everywhere, and it would be safer for pedestrians if people didn't cycle on the pavement!
A I know, but cycling on the roads can be very dangerous. There are quite a few drivers who don't pay enough attention to cyclists.
B Yes … yes … You're right. And of course there isn't any form of transport which is better for the environment! Now, where do I sign?

2 **A** You're standing as a candidate at the next election for government. Now, how is this government, which has seen unemployment increase by 7%, going to persuade people to vote for it?
B Well, unemployment has increased because of the world economy and globalisation, not because of this government's policies. However, we are of course very concerned, and we intend to create thousands of jobs in the first year of the new government.
A But that's what your party promised before the last election. How do you expect people to believe you this time? What can you say to our viewers to convince them that they can trust you?
B The viewers know that the current situation has got nothing to do with …

3 OK … OK … Thanks to everyone for coming tonight. As you all know, we have been fundraising this week for the homeless centre in the city centre, and I'm proud to tell you that we have managed to raise £1,450 this evening! Thank you so much for your generous contributions! Now, before the band plays the final song, let me remind you that the collection ends on Monday – when we will hand over the money to the homeless centre manager, so there is still time to make a contribution if you'd like to! OK, back to the music …

4 All students must stand up and be counted and protest against the cuts that this government has made in British university education. British university education, which is paid for by everybody, should be available to everybody. Going to university is a right for the poorest as well as the richest.

5 Over the next month, you have a choice to make. Not just between two political parties, or even two candidates. It's a choice between two very different plans for our country.

You can choose to vote for Mary Harrison, whose plan would cut taxes for the people at the very top. She says if we do, our economy will grow and everyone will benefit. But you know what, we tried that before, and it's what caused the economic problems in the first place. I believe that the only way to build a strong economy is to provide opportunities for the working class, asking the wealthy to pay a little more so that we can invest in education, manufacturing and national energy and create good working class jobs. The choice you face couldn't be clearer. On 17 November, vote for me, Sam Jackson.

Exercise 7 3.15 page 87

1 The woman who signs the petition doesn't cycle, but her eldest son, who is a member of a cycling club, cycles everywhere. 2 The politician is standing as a candidate in the election for the government, which has seen unemployment rise by seven per cent. 3 The collection for the homeless centre ends on Monday, when the money will be handed over to the homeless centre manager.
4 The students are protesting against cuts in British university education, which is paid for by everybody.
5 The advert says voters can choose to vote for Mary Harrison, whose plan would cut taxes for the people at the very top.

Transcript

See exercise 6.

For further practice of British politics: Vocabulary Builder 8A page 121

1 General elections 2 constituencies 3 candidates 4 member of parliament 5 proportional representation 6 votes 7 majority 8 prime minister 9 hung parliament 10 coalition

8B Grammar

Second and third conditional

Exercise 1 page 88

A disease B famine
C global warming D nuclear weapons

Exercise 2 page 88

Second conditional … we could feed everyone if we organised national spending better.
Third conditional If we hadn't invented antibiotics, it's possible that we might have died out by now. … we might have destroyed the whole world if there'd been a war in the '80s.

Exercise 3 page 88

2 If I hadn't broken my old glasses, I wouldn't have bought some new ones. / I wouldn't have bought some new glasses if I hadn't broken my old ones.
3 If Jane wasn't/weren't exhausted, she would go to the party. / Jane would go to the party if she wasn't/weren't exhausted.
4 If Harry hadn't left the door open, the dog wouldn't have got out. / The dog wouldn't have got out if Harry hadn't left the door open.
5 If I could find his number, I could call him. / I could call him if I could find his number.
6 If the road hadn't been icy, they wouldn't have fallen off their bikes. / They wouldn't have fallen off their bikes if the road hadn't been icy.
7 If we had realised you were coming, we would have waited. / We would have waited if we had realised you were coming.
8 If you got enough sleep, you wouldn't feel tired. / You wouldn't feel tired if you got enough sleep.

For further practice of second and third conditionals: Grammar Builder 8.1 page 139

1 2 If she weren't from Brazil, she wouldn't speak Portuguese. / She wouldn't speak Portuguese if she weren't from Brazil. 3 If Max wasn't/weren't too young, he would drive. / Max would drive if he wasn't / weren't too young. 4 If it wasn't/weren't winter, the weather wouldn't be cold. / The weather wouldn't be cold if it wasn't/weren't winter. 5 If I remembered his address, I could visit him. / I could visit him if I remembered his address. 6 If they weren't hungry, they wouldn't be making toast. / They wouldn't be making toast if they weren't hungry. 7 If she could swim, she would come to the beach. / She would come to the beach if she could swim. 8 If I trusted him, I would be his friend. / I would be his friend if I trusted him.

2 1 hadn't warned, would have been 2 would have eaten, hadn't had 3 would have been, had lost 4 hadn't been put out, would have destroyed 5 would have bought, hadn't been 6 wouldn't have stayed, had had 7 wouldn't have given, had known 8 had apologised, would have forgiven

Exercise 4 page 88

I wouldn't give money to charity unless I thought it really made a difference. … even if we'd done something about it sooner, it would still be a threat … And supposing they got into the wrong hands, it could still happen.
1 Supposing 2 even if / unless 3 unless
4 Supposing 5 unless 6 Even if

For further practice of alternatives to *if*: Grammar Builder 8.2 page 140

1 1 even if 2 Supposing 3 unless 4 Unless 5 Even if 6 Supposing

Exercise 5 page 88

1 he had bought the boots 2 won a lot of cash
3 you hadn't forgotten to bring 4 unless I knew how to speak 5 she would have known the answer
6 the government didn't make cuts

8C Listening

Hashtag activitism

Exercise 1 page 89

#occupywallstreet (Occupy Wall Street) protests against social and economic inequality.; #blacklivesmatter (Black Lives Matter) protests against violence towards black people.; #anti-war (Anti-war) protests against starting or taking part in a war.; #climatesummit (Climate summit) protests against global warming and climate change.

For further practice of prefixes: Vocabulary Builder 8C page 121

1 1 upgraded 2 rewrite 3 anti-government 4 international 5 overcharged 6 mispronounce 7 prehistoric 8 ex-president 9 underestimate

Exercise 2 page 89

It is generally in favour of online campaigns.

Exercise 3 page 89

1 for instance 2 even so 3 nevertheless 4 still 5 incidentally 6 as I was saying

Exercise 4 3.16 page 89

Transcript

1 Politicians get paid too much. Mind you, ...
2 This government hasn't done half of what they promised. Still, ...
3 There's a protest march against university fees. However, ...
4 People are too into consumerism these days. Talking of consumerism, ...
5 I know that it will be impossible to eradicate homelessness. All the same, ...
6 I didn't think his speech was very inspiring. Nevertheless, ...

Exercise 5 3.17 page 89

1 B 2 D 3 A 4 F 5 C 6 E

Transcript

1 Politicians get paid too much. Mind you, they often work very long hours.
2 This government hasn't done half of what they promised. Still, unemployment is down this year.
3 There's a protest march against university fees. However, it hasn't been very well publicised.
4 People are too into consumerism these days. Talking of consumerism, how much did you pay for your TV?
5 I know that it will be impossible to eradicate homelessness. All the same, we should not stop trying.
6 I didn't think his speech was very inspiring. Nevertheless, he handled the public's questions well.

Exercise 6 3.18 page 89

1 Even so 2 For instance 3 You know 4 Incidentally 5 As I was saying 6 By the way

Transcript

1 I get fed up with listening to politicians, and I'm not sure who to vote for. Even so, I think we're lucky to have a democracy, and we should vote.
2 Social media sites are a powerful force. For instance, information on Facebook travels far and fast.
3 Have you seen that film with David Oyelowo? You know, the one about the march from Selma to Montgomery?
4 I was discussing climate change with Tom the other day. Incidentally, he's joined the Green Party.
5 OK, thanks for calling ... Sorry about that interruption, Dad. As I was saying, I've been very busy with work lately ...
6 It was really nice meeting and talking to you. By the way, here's the address of the café I mentioned.

Exercise 7 3.19 page 89

Speaker 1 C Speaker 2 A Speaker 3 B Speaker 4 E

Transcript

1 Many people are of the opinion that using social media to tweet or post information online is an effective form of social protest. However, I'm not sure that I completely agree with that. I mean, I guess it might help, but I think there must be other, more efficient ways of raising awareness. For instance, people often quote the ice bucket challenge as a good example of how well this sort of campaign works. You know, when people were tipping iced water over their heads and filming themselves. Obviously, I'm glad it worked. All the same, many of my friends were taking up the challenge without following the campaign behind it, finding out anything about the ALS disease or donating anything to the ALS website.
2 People have started to create hashtags to draw attention to the issues that are important to them. With hashtag trends, people now have a forum to give their views on things and be heard by like-minded people. And that can only be a good thing. Personally, I love that I can find out so much about what's happening in the world by following trending topics on Twitter. However, I don't always do anything about them ... still, at least I am aware. The other good thing about this sort of activism is that it has no borders. I can just as easily join in with the Wall Street protests in America as I can the food shortage campaigns in Africa, even though I am in neither of these places. We now have a global voice.
3 I am an assistant professor of sociology at the University of California and have done research into the effectiveness of social media activism. You know, 58% of Americans think that tweeting or posting information online is an effective form of protest. My colleagues and I looked at the money raised by online activities for a cause as opposed to money raised by offline activities, such as direct mailing. For instance, we looked at the Save Darfur campaign over several years. What we discovered was that although the social media campaign was considered successful, less than 1% of the million people who signed up to the campaign actually donated any money. Still, this amounted to $100,000 over two and a half years. In contrast, however, direct mail contributions brought in over a million dollars for the campaign in one year alone.
4 There is absolutely no substitute for direct action if you want to make a change. I get fed up with people who just talk about things all the time. They think they have done something when they have liked a Facebook page or retweeted a post! That's not enough. Why not write a letter to a politician or to a newspaper, or organise a protest vote or demonstration? If you really feel strongly about something, then you will do all you can to make something happen. I think that a lot of social media activism doesn't actually have a clear goal. So the campaigns just fizzle out after a while because no one knows what to do next. And that's a shame.

8D Grammar

Mixed conditionals

Exercise 2 page 90

... it's estimated that over 50 million people would be worse off today if the charity hadn't been set up.; If it weren't for Comic Relief, literacy rates in Uganda would probably not have reached 73%.; And the number of children attending

primary school in Africa might not have increased by 60 million if the charity didn't exist; But it couldn't have achieved all this if it didn't have the support of the comedians …

Exercise 3 page 90
1 c 2 e 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 d

Exercise 4 page 90
1 would / could / might have bought 2 could go
3 wouldn't / might not have 4 wouldn't have left
5 answered

For further practice of mixed conditionals, *I wish* and *if only*: Grammar Builder 8.3 page 140

1 1 d – would / could call 2 f – wouldn't know 3 b – had 4 c – weren't 5 a – would / could go 6 e – didn't love

2 2 If he liked football, he would have watched the game. / He would have watched the game if he liked football. 3 If it hadn't snowed heavily last night, the roads wouldn't be closed. / The roads wouldn't be closed if it hadn't snowed heavily last night. 4 If she hadn't forgotten to feed the dog, she wouldn't have to go home. / She wouldn't have to go home if she hadn't forgotten to feed the dog. 5 If he were good at maths, he would have passed last week's test. / He would have passed last week's test if he were good at maths. 6 If they hadn't cooked lunch, the kitchen wouldn't be untidy. / The kitchen wouldn't be untidy if they hadn't cooked lunch. 7 If you hadn't been late for class again, your teacher wouldn't be annoyed. / Your teacher wouldn't be annoyed if you hadn't been late for class again. 8 If she wasn't/weren't at the theatre, she would have answered her phone. / She would have answered her phone if she wasn't/weren't at the theatre.

3 1 I'd rather you hadn't told my brother about the surprise party. 2 I'd prefer it if you had worn jeans. 3 If only I'd asked for his phone number. 4 I wish my football team had won the match. 5 I'd rather we hadn't stayed in a shabby B&B. / I'd rather not have stayed in a shabby B&B. 6 If only you would lend me money for the tickets. 7 I wish I hadn't promised to babysit my little sister.

Exercise 5 page 90
2 If our car hadn't broken down this morning, we wouldn't have to walk to school now. / We wouldn't have to walk to school now if our car hadn't broken down this morning.
3 If he was/were interested in politics, he'd have voted. / He'd have voted if he was/were interested in politics.
4 If Beth hadn't failed her exams, she would be at college this year. / Beth would be at college this year if she hadn't failed her exams.
5 If Max had gone to university, he would have a degree. / Max would have a degree if he had gone to university.
6 If I wasn't/weren't a terrible cook, I would have helped with the cooking. / I would have helped with the cooking if I wasn't/weren't a terrible cook.
7 If the forecast was/were good, they would have gone out. / They would have gone out if the forecast was/were good.
8 If she wasn't/weren't afraid of flying, she wouldn't have taken a boat. / She wouldn't have taken a boat if she wasn't/weren't afraid of flying.
9 If he spoke Greek, he would have helped the tourist. / He would have helped the tourist if he spoke Greek.
10 If I had eaten breakfast, I wouldn't be hungry. / I wouldn't be hungry if I had eaten breakfast.
11 If Jay was/were good at maths, he could have helped us. / Jay could have helped us if he was/were good at maths.

8E Word Skills

Verb patterns

Exercise 2 page 91
1 The Mayor … got the Governor of Ohio to send in soldiers. They used tear gas to try to make the students disperse … … Governor Reagan had California University close its entire college system …
2 thousands of Americans were made to reconsider their attitude to the Vietnam War.
3 Most people … would have preferred them to continue their previous peaceful demonstrations …

Exercise 3 page 91
1 to resign 2 to sign 3 arrest 4 decide
5 not to tell 6 to keep

Exercise 4 page 91
1 to leave 2 not to lie 3 realise
4 changed 5 injured 6 to apologise

Exercise 5 page 91
1 hiding 2 waiting 3 thrown 4 wondering
5 done 6 investigating 7 banned

8F Reading

Making a difference

Exercise 2 page 92
Morgan Baskin's idea wasn't connected to her school life.

Exercise 3 page 92
Wilson To – He wanted to stop bullying.; Morgan Baskin – She wanted politicians to listen to young people.
Note: Rene realised that his newspaper could help people after he had started it.

Exercise 4 page 93
1 B 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 C 6 A

Exercise 5 page 93
1 T 2 F 3 F 4 NG 5 F 6 T

Exercise 6 page 93
1 puts in 2 help out 3 thinks up 4 took on 5 squeeze (you) in 6 stepped down 7 got ahead 8 set up

8G Speaking

Collaborative task

Exercise 1 page 94
They aim to protect the environment by investigating issues, raising awareness, talking to governments and

other people who can make a change, and educating young people so that they can help to protect the environment in the future.

Exercise 3 page 94

1 start 2 Let's 3 by 4 mind 5 opinion 6 of 7 chief 8 would 9 feel 10 Not 11 another 12 point 13 agree 14 you 15 right 16 some 17 sure 18 take 19 how

Exercise 5 3.21 page 94

1 using public transport more often, saving electricity at home, recycling
2 the less we use our cars, the less CO_2 we pump into the atmosphere. / Generating electricity with fossil-based fuels causes a lot of global warming, which leads to climate change. / The more glass and metal we recycle, the better.
3 Students' own answers.

Transcript

Examiner I'd like you to imagine that you are discussing practical ways in which people can help to combat climate change. How effective are each of the five suggestions?
Student 1 Let's begin with writing to local and national governments, shall we?
Student 2 OK. In my opinion, that wouldn't be very effective.
Student 1 Why do you say that?
Student 2 Well, politicians get lots of letters and they just ignore them. I think they probably often don't even read them!
Student 1 I'm with you on that! Personally I'd say that using public transport more often would be quite effective, because the less we use our cars, the less CO_2 we pump into the atmosphere.
Student 2 Good point. I also believe that saving electricity at home is an effective measure. Generating electricity with fossil-based fuels causes a lot of global warming, which leads to climate change.
Student 1 Absolutely. I couldn't agree more. Turning lights off and using energy-saving light bulbs are good ideas.
Student 2 What about planting trees? What's your view on that?
Student 1 Mmm. I'm not sure. I'm of the opinion that planting trees wouldn't help much.
Student 2 Really? I'm not sure I agree. Trees take CO_2 from the atmosphere and give out oxygen, so I think it's very effective.
Student 1 You'd need to plant an awful lot of trees, though!
Student 2 Yes, I think you're right. The last measure is recycling. I think that would be quite effective. The more glass and metal we recycle, the better.
Student 1 Not only that, recycling packaging helps too.
Examiner OK, thank you very much.

Exercise 6 3.22 page 94

using public transport more often, saving electricity at home

Transcript

Examiner Which are the two easiest for young people to do?
Student 1 I feel quite strongly that recycling is the easiest. It isn't difficult to make sure that bottles and tins go into the recycling bins. The second most easy, I think, is —
Student 2 Sorry to interrupt, but I take a rather different view on recycling. Personally, I think it's quite difficult to know which materials can be recycled, and to separate them out. Would you agree with that?
Student 1 That's true to some extent, I suppose. What about saving electricity at home? That's easy, don't you think?
Student 2 Yes. Switching off lights when you aren't using them is very easy.
Student 1 And not only that, replacing old light bulbs with energy-saving ones is the norm, nowadays.
Student 2 Can we agree that planting trees is not a practical suggestion for young people?
Student 1 Yes, absolutely. And I don't think writing letters to politicians would appeal to most young people. They wouldn't know who to write to, for starters!
Student 2 Yes, I agree. What about using public transport more often? That's very effective and very easy for young people because many of them don't have cars anyway!
Student 1 Yes, I couldn't agree more. So, shall we reach a decision? My feeling is that using public transport and saving electricity at home are the easiest things for young people to do.
Student 2 Yes, I'm with you on that.
Student 1 That's settled, then.

Exercise 7 3.22 page 94

Would you agree with that? ... don't you think? Can we agree that ...? Sorry to interrupt, but ... Not only that, ... So, shall we reach a decision? That's settled, then.

Transcript

See exercise 6.

8H Writing

A report

Exercise 3 page 95

The writer writes in a formal style which is suitable for a newspaper. The first sentence states the purpose (The aim of this report is to assess the plan to ban traffic from the town centre.) and the final paragraph ends with a suggestion (I would suggest that the council press ahead with its plan as it will improve the quality of life of both residents and visitors). The writer has included four headings.

Exercise 4 page 95

The aim of this report is to ..., It was thought that ..., According to ..., I would suggest ...

Exercise 5 page 95

1 Few people use buses nowadays. Nevertheless, that does not mean services should be discontinued.
2 The roads around the school are quite dangerous, therefore students probably would not cycle to school.
3 Bus tickets are not very expensive, although buying a season ticket is more economical.
4 It is difficult to cross the road by the school. However, there is a plan to put in a pedestrian crossing.
5 Too many parents drive their children to school. What is more, they all arrive at about the same time.

9 Consumerism

Map of resources

9A Vocabulary
Student's Book, pages 96–97; Workbook, page 96
Photocopiable: 9A (Shopping)

9B Grammar
Student's Book, page 98; Workbook, page 97
Photocopiable: 9B (Emphasis)

9C Listening
Student's Book, page 99; Workbook, page 98

9D Grammar
Student's Book, page 100; Workbook, page 99
Photocopiable: 9D (Participle clauses)

9E Word Skills
Student's Book, page 101; Workbook, page 100

9F Reading
Student's Book, pages 102–103; Workbook, page 101

9G Speaking
Student's Book, page 104; Workbook, page 102

9H Writing
Student's Book, page 105; Workbook, page 103

Culture 9
Student's Book, page 116
DVD and DVD worksheet: Unit 9

Classroom Presentation Tool Unit 9

End of unit
Unit Review: Workbook, pages 104–105
Photocopiable: Grammar Review
Photocopiable: Vocabulary Review
Exam Skills Trainer 5: Workbook, pages 106–107
Exam Skills Trainer 5: Student's Book, pages 106–107
Cumulative Review 1–9: Workbook, pages 116–117
Progress Test and Short Tests: Unit 9
Cumulative Test: Units 5–9
Cumulative Test: Units 1–9

9A Vocabulary

Shopping

Exercise 2 page 96
2 Budget 3 afford 4 overspend 5 get into debt
6 Shop around 7 snap up 8 overcharged 9 pick up
10 knock down 11 haggle 12 splash out

For further practice of phrasal verbs with *up* and *down*: Vocabulary Builder 9A: page 121

1
1 put up with someone 2 set something up
3 speak up 4 cut down (on) something
5 back someone up 6 calm down
7 put something down to 8 bring something up
9 turn down 10 put someone down

2
1 back (me) up 2 bring (the salary issue) up
3 set (your own business) up 4 speak up
5 put up with 6 cut down 7 calm down
8 put (his success) down to 9 putting (me) down
10 turn (the job) down

Exercise 4 page 97
1 items 2 wish list 3 reviews 4 basket
5 delivery 6 checkout 7 notifications 8 track

Exercise 6 4.02 page 97
Speaker 1 E Speaker 2 A Speaker 3 B Speaker 4 C

Transcript

1 Man I wasn't sure if it would be a great buy at the time because I really splashed out on it – it was a lot of money! It's my mountain bike. I've had it for about ten years now, and I've never had a problem with it, not even a puncture! I've learned that sometimes it's a good idea to pay more for something if it's well-made, because it lasts longer. Of course, it doesn't always work like that!

2 Woman I've always liked leather clothes, so it's great to finally have my own leather jacket, and I've been wearing it continuously since I bought it six months ago! I got it at a stall in Camden Market. I like shopping around at markets and I found this at a second-hand stall. It was in really good condition, and it's nice and warm. I couldn't have afforded a new one like it, so I'm really pleased with it.

3 Boy I don't know if I could call my mobile phone a bargain, but it was certainly cheaper than my friends' phones and is just as good. I bought it online last year and I've never had a problem with it. It's a Chinese brand that wasn't very well known, and you could only buy it online. However, since then, it's become really popular because it's half the price of better known brands. It's got twice the memory and the battery lasts for ages. I've been using it all day today listening to music and I've still got 75% left!

4 Girl I'd say these trainers that I'm wearing were definitely a bargain. I picked them up at a sale after Christmas, and they still look as good as new five months later. And I've worn them most days! I've played sport, gone walking – done all sorts of things in them. The only problem is that my feet haven't stopped growing, and they're beginning to get a bit tight, so I'm going to have to go shopping again and find some new ones. Still, my younger sister wants them, so it will have been a really good deal if she gets some use out of them as well.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercise 7 4.02 page 97

1 Because he has had his bike for ten years now and has never had a problem with it.
2 Because she has been wearing it continuously since she bought it six months ago.
3 Because he has been using it to listen to music all day.
4 Because she has done all sorts of activities in them and they still look new.

Transcript

See exercise 6.

9B Grammar

Emphasis

Exercise 2 page 98

1 a … it's them who cause all the problems.
b What they should do is employ extra staff to help clean up the streets.
2 All the government needs to do is force companies to use …

For further practice of emphasis (1): Grammar Builder 9.1 page 141

1 2 It was the girls' team that/which won the quiz.
3 What happened was that my parents stopped me from going out.
4 What Frank did was (to) cycle to the river.
5 All she did was (to) give them her opinion.
6 It was the Egyptians who built the Pyramids.
7 All we need is five more minutes.

2 1 One thing (that) I can't stand is having a cold.
2 One person who will definitely know the answer is Neil.
3 The country (that) I'm really interested in going to is Thailand.
4 The film (that/which) I really enjoyed was *The Hunger Games*.
5 The food she prefers to Chinese is Italian.
6 One idea (that) he suggested was having a barbecue at his house.

Exercise 3 page 98

2 It's a debit card which / that I've got, not a credit card.
3 It was in 1916 when / that the first supermarket opened, not 1920.
4 It's her aunt who / that works in a store, not her mum.
5 It's low prices which / that many people want, not quality.
6 It's on Friday when / that the sales start, not today.
7 It's teenagers who / that I blame for the litter, not the restaurants.

Exercise 4 page 98

One thing I can't stand is all the litter outside fast food restaurants. – I can't stand all the litter outside fast food restaurants.
The people I blame are the teenagers – I blame the teenagers

Exercise 5 page 98

1 One idea that has really caught on is store loyalty cards.
2 The people who / that should change are the directors of companies.
3 One place (that) many European firms are investing in is Asia. / One place where many European firms are investing is Asia.
4 The thing that drives most consumerism is greed.
5 The thing that creates most waste is plastic packaging.
6 The country where self-service stores first opened was/is the USA.

Exercise 6 page 98

1 thing 2 all 3 what 4 it's 5 where 6 one 7 that

9C Listening

Moneyless living

Exercise 4 4.03 page 99

1 fact (it's true that)
2 opinion (in Daniel's view)
3 fact (the truth is)
4 fact (in fact)
5 fact (undeniably)
6 opinion (she believed)

Transcript

1 Daniel Suelo graduated from the University of Colorado with a degree in anthropology. Then he worked with tribes in Ecuador for ten years. So, it's true that Daniel didn't always live outside society. As he worked in Ecuador, Daniel observed how the tribes started to follow western economics. They began selling their best crops instead of eating them. Then, the tribes used the cash for things which, in Daniel's view, they simply didn't need. What he noticed was that the richer the tribes became, the more their health declined. The truth is that money was impoverishing them.

2 Heidemarie Schwermer was not born into poverty. In fact, her father was a successful businessman, but he lost everything in the Second World War. Undeniably, her family became very poor for a while, and it was a real shock to her how they were treated. Later, the family became rich again, but now Heidemarie was uncomfortable with it. She believed money had come to define her and she didn't want this any more. So she became fascinated with finding ways to live without money.

Exercise 5 4.04 page 99

1 b 2 b 3 a

Transcript

1 Welcome, listeners. In Moneybox Today, we will be talking about Mark Doyle, – 'The Moneyless Man' – and debating his tips for better living. Although Mark has now returned to the monetary world, he strongly believes that we should all cut down on our endless consumption of consumer goods. His first suggestion is – if you want to buy something, don't! First, have a look at websites such as Freecycle and Freegle, where people post things they no longer need. You will be amazed at what people don't want! Secondly, if you want new clothes, organise a clothes swap with friends and neighbours. You will be surprised at how well they can work. Try to be more

self-sufficient – grow fruit and vegetables in pots or in your garden and get hens for eggs. But Mark's top tip? Install a composting toilet. It saves money, water and the environment! Now, how realistic do we think these proposals are? Here in the audience, we have …

2 **A** Have you read this article? What do you think of these people who live without money?
B It's quite impressive, isn't it? I know I couldn't do it.
A Impressive? I think it's a joke. In fact, what they are doing is living off people who do earn and spend money!
B That's a bit harsh, isn't it? My feeling is that people are entitled to their beliefs and to decide how they want to live.
A No, they aren't! Not if they're criticising the rest of us for our beliefs and the way we live!
B OK, but they do have a point. I mean, only the other day, you were saying how we are being over-charged by banks and energy companies, and I think you're right – they do over-charge.
A Yes, well that's true. I suppose I'm just annoyed at all the things they suggest we do in order to avoid spending money. As far as I'm concerned, I haven't got the time to grow tomatoes on the balcony or look after a chicken, or drive halfway across the country to look at someone's second-hand fridge. I need things now and I need them fast!
B But isn't that part of it? That modern life is so manic and work-driven, that we don't have time to enjoy it?

3 In a year, the average US citizen consumes 125 kilos of meat, uses 288 kilos of paper and uses energy equivalent to 7.8 metric tons of oil. Compared to just 45 years ago, these figures have increased by more than a third. In my view, this tells us how unsustainable our consumer society is. If we look back into history, we find that the birth of the consumer society is very recent. For centuries, no one spent a significant amount of time or resources on shopping for goods produced far from home. Before the Industrial Revolution in America and most of Europe in the 19th century, the vast majority of the population lived in the countryside and worked in agriculture. Clothing and possessions were extremely limited and made in the same village. It is undeniable that at that time there was little money and few things to buy. Therefore, there was no such thing as a consumer. And until very recently, people valued their leisure time far more than earning more money.

9D Grammar

Participle clauses

Exercise 3 page 100

1 high street stores struggling to compete – high street stores which / that are struggling to compete
2 enjoying the convenience and cheapness of online shopping – while they are enjoying the convenience and cheapness of online shopping
3 Having made an online order – After they have made an online order
4 knowing that only one will fit – because they know that only one will fit
5 Used sensibly – If it is used sensibly

Exercise 4 page 100

1 Having paid
2 Realising
3 spending
4 Having been charged/Charged
5 Not being
6 Kept

Exercise 5 page 100

2 Having been open for just six months, the bookshop closed in November. (rule 3)
3 Not having any money, I couldn't afford a cab. (rule 4)
4 Opened in 1905, Berlin's KaDaWe is the biggest department store in Europe. (rule 1)
5 Bringing some benefits, online shopping also has disadvantages. (rule 2)
6 Not being free that evening, we didn't go to the party. (rule 4)

Exercise 6 page 100

1 switching to a newer mobile
2 buying a bike
3 looking for bargains
4 reading the guarantee
5 spending ten minutes looking for the store

For further practice of conjunctions and prepositions: Grammar Builder 9.3 page 142

1
1 Having read
2 On hearing
3 After packing
4 Cooked slowly
5 Being thirsty
6 Since ordering
7 Opening
8 Until knowing

2
1 Since taking up running, he is much fitter.
2 On realising what had happened, she laughed.
3 Being the last to leave, Rob shut the door.
4 Although I like reggae, I prefer rock music.
5 Given a chance, he should succeed.
6 Having watched the DVD, we returned it to the shop.

Exercise 7 page 100

1 Having compared / After comparing
2 Having
3 paying
4 shopping
5 doing
6 Given

9E Word Skills

Money idioms

Exercise 1 4.05 page 101

Speaker 1 B Speaker 2 E Speaker 3 A Speaker 4 D

Transcript

1 As I see it, you get what you pay for. If something looks too good to be true, it probably is. Something that's dirt cheap may look like a bargain, but you're probably better off spending a bit more if you want decent quality.
2 I guess I'm doing OK financially. I'm not rolling in it, but I'm comfortably off. I still have to save up for the bigger purchases though, like that new jacket I fancy getting.
3 Oh, hi, Sam. Yeah, I know everyone's going to the concert tomorrow. Of course I want to go, but I'm completely broke. I don't suppose you could lend me a bit of cash, could you?
4 A lot of those 'two for one' or 'buy one get one half price' deals are a rip-off. Half the time the supermarkets put their normal prices up, so you actually end up paying more than you would usually. Not great when you're hard up! It's outrageous!

Exercise 2 4.05 page 101

1 rolling 2 broke 3 rip 4 dirt 5 hard
6 comfortably
(The following idioms are in the recording in this order: be dirt cheap; (not) be rolling in it; be comfortably off; be (completely) broke; be a rip-off; be hard up.)

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 3 page 101

1 broke 2 dirt cheap 3 rolling in it 4 hard up
5 a rip-off 6 well off

Exercise 5 page 101

1 g 2 b 3 d 4 c 5 e 6 a 7 f

Exercise 6 page 101

1 make ends meet
2 be in the red
3 tightening my belt
4 made a fortune
5 living hand to mouth
6 live in the lap of luxury
7 paid through the nose

9F Reading

Playing with our emotions

Exercise 3 page 102

1 D 2 C 3 F 4 A

Exercise 4 page 102

The following techniques are mentioned: 1, 3 and 5.
They are mentioned in the following order: 5, 1, 3.

Exercise 5 page 102

1 slogan
2 consumers
3 jingle
4 endorsements
5 commercials
6 brands
7 launch
8 logo

9G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 2 4.07 page 104

1 A, the flea market
2 Her friend Sally likes individual things and prefers things that no one else has. She doesn't wear many brands or designer clothes apart from jeans so the shopping centre isn't her taste.
3 She's asked which place she would prefer to go shopping.
4 B, the shopping centre

Transcript

Examiner These two photos show places where you might go shopping. I'd like you to compare the photos and say which place would be better for buying a present for a friend.
Girl That's an interesting question. Well, first of all, they are two very different places to shop. The first one looks like a flea market or a street market. I can see lots of people, so it's obviously quite a popular place. This kind of market sells all sorts of second-hand goods, for example clothes and crockery, as well as crafts and individual items. They are usually quite cheap and you can often pick up a bargain. The second photo, on the other hand, shows a very different place. Um, let me see. It's a large, smart shopping centre. Shopping centres are also very popular, although I can't see many people there. Obviously the shops here are indoors, whereas the flea market is outdoors. They usually have lots of different chain stores, such as Next or H&M, selling designer brands. In addition, there'll be other shops selling almost everything you want.
If I had to choose a birthday present for a friend … Well, for one thing, it would depend which friend. For instance, if I were to choose something for my close friend Sally, I'd go to this flea market. Not because I want to buy her anything cheap, but because she likes individual things. She prefers things that no one else has. I could find her some jewellery or an interesting bag – something like that. However, I would never go to an expensive shopping centre like this one because that's not her taste. Although she has a real interest in fashion, she doesn't really wear many brands or designer clothes apart from jeans. She finds things in second-hand shops. In my opinion, she always looks great. I think she could have a career in designing clothes one day. And that's why I find it hard choosing presents for her!
Examiner Thank you. Now it's your turn to answer a question. Which place would you prefer to go shopping?
Girl Mmm, thinking about it, I suppose I'd prefer the shopping centre. First of all, it's indoors so you can go there in any weather, even when it's snowing in winter. The outdoor market isn't so much fun in bad weather. Despite the fact that things are generally cheaper in the market, I don't really like buying second-hand goods. Not only that, but the things you buy in a market may not be very good quality – that's my opinion, anyway. So, overall, I'd prefer to shop in the shopping centre.

Exercise 4 page 104

(Possible answers)

Introducing opinions In my opinion, ...; as I see it, ...; to my mind, ...; I think ...; I believe ...

Making additional points also; As well as that, ...; In addition, ...

Giving examples for example; such as; like

Contrasting points but; although; even though; in contrast

Gaining time Let me consider that for a moment. Hmm, let me think.

Exercise 5 4.07 page 104

1 yes, she does.

2 That's an interesting question.; Well, first of all, ...; The first one looks ...; The second photo, on the other hand, ...; Um, let me see ...; although ...; whereas ...; such as ...; In addition, ...; Well, for one thing, ...; For instance, ...; Not because (...), but because ...; ... something like that.; However, ...; Although ...; In my opinion, ...; Mmm, thinking about it, I suppose ...; First of all, ...; Despite the fact that ...; Not only that, but ...; So, overall, ...

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 6 4.08 page 104

1 B the shopping centre

2 Because he knows where things are so it saves a lot of time! He isn't a very good shopper and he finds it hard to decide what to buy for people, and there's more choice in a shopping centre. He doesn't have the sort of friends that would appreciate something from a flea market. He isn't a very good shopper, so he wouldn't find a good present there.

3 He's asked whether he ever buys second-hand goods.

4 No. He never goes into second-hand shops and he's never got the hang of eBay.

Transcript

Examiner These two photos show places where you might go shopping. I'd like you to compare the photos and say which place would be better for buying a present for a friend.

Boy The first photo shows a sort of outdoor market where there are a lot of second-hand things, all probably quite old and quite cheap. It looks quite busy. The other is a shopping mall with everything in one place under a massive glass roof, which looks very elegant. There are escalators between the levels and what looks like a café or restaurant on the first floor, though I can't be certain. Compared with the outdoor market, I should think that the shops are very expensive. As for buying a present for a friend, I'm not sure about that ... let me think. I think I'd probably go to the shopping centre. The reason I think that is you know what's there and where things are. It saves a lot of time! Another thing is, I'm not a very good shopper. I find it hard to decide what to buy for people, and there's more choice in a shopping centre. For those reasons, I think that the shopping centre is better for me. On top of that, I don't have the sort of friends that would appreciate something from a flea market. They prefer books and music, games and things that a market doesn't really offer. And as I'm not a very good shopper, it could be that I wouldn't find a good present there, anyway!

Examiner Do you ever buy second-hand goods? And can you tell me why?

Boy No, I can't say I do. It's not that I object to buying second-hand things – I don't have any strong feelings either way – it's just that I never go into second-hand shops and I've never got the hang of eBay. My brother on the other hand is always buying stuff on eBay and he's picked up quite a few bargains. Perhaps I should give it a try.

Exercise 7 page 104

1 think 2 main 3 thing 4 Another 5 top
6 definitely 7 reasons 8 opinions 9 sure
10 argued 11 arguing 12 suppose

Exercise 8 4.08 page 104

The reason I think that is ...
Another thing is ...
On top of that ...
For those reasons, I think that ...
I don't have any strong feelings either way ...
I'm not sure about that. Let me think.
It could be that ...

Transcript

See exercise 6.

9H Writing

A letter to a newspaper

Exercise 3 page 105

1 4

2 Paragraph 1: reasons for writing; Paragraph 2: opinion and reasons; Paragraph 3: suggestions; Paragraph 4: statement of faith in your measures

3 Students' own answers.

Exercise 4 page 105

1 suggest 2 reduced 3 stated 4 increase 5 true

Exercise 5 page 105

stated – claimed
increase – rise
true – undeniable
reduced – cut
suggest – put forward

For further practice of synonyms: Vocabulary Builder 9H: page 121

3 1 believe 2 allow 3 try 4 criticise 5 be rude 6 have to 7 sort out 8 get better

4 (Possible answers)

1 I have no faith in the government's ability to solve the issue.
2 Smoking is not permitted in here.
3 I do not wish to find fault with your establishment.
4 I hope you recover in the near future.
5 You are obliged to respond to that question.
6 He offended me deliberately.

5 Exam Skills Trainer

Exercise 1 page 106

a T b F c NG

Exercise 2 page 106

1 T 2 T 3 F 4 NG 5 T 6 F 7 NG 8 F

Exercise 3 page 107

D. Option B is wrong because the text says she buys clothes when there's a wedding.

Exercise 4 4.09 page 106

1 C 2 A 3 B 4 D 5 B

Transcript

Interviewer Today I'm talking to Gina Hansom about the future of shopping. Gina is the CEO of a reputable market research company. Gina, where will we see the biggest changes in the years to come?

Gina I think one of the biggest changes will occur in the shopping mall, where currently you have your supermarket, your chain stores and your food outlets, but very little else. The malls of the future are likely to be much, much bigger, with many additional services ranging from gyms and fitness centres to luxury spas, medical services, and maybe even schools.

Interviewer Why are malls so popular, Gina? I mean, what's the big attraction?

Gina Basically, they're clean and they're safe – it's unusual for anything to go wrong in a mall. And then, there's the weather: you can go to a mall if it's raining, if it's snowing or if it's 40° outside. A trip to the shopping mall does not depend on climatic conditions, so they're a great place to go for recreation.

Interviewer That makes sense. So what other changes are in store for us?

Gina Have you noticed the number of farmers' markets that are springing up all over the place? This is because homemade products are becoming more popular, be it homegrown vegetables, home-baked cakes or cheese. But it isn't only natural food consumers are after; they're buying all sorts of home-made goods, such as hand-knitted sweaters, for example. A number of sites selling handcrafted goods are already online and the trend is likely to continue and grow into the future.

Interviewer Gina, we've mentioned home-made clothes, will these pose a threat to the current fashion chains in the mall?

Gina No, not really. Although the home-made brand is likely to expand, it probably won't represent more than fifteen to twenty per cent of the consumer economy.

Interviewer Does that mean that the future of today's chain stores is assured?

Gina Not at all! Clothes shopping will soon be completely revolutionised thanks to new developments in the world of robotics. The shops of the future will have a body scanner on the shop floor, linked to a machine that cuts, stitches and puts the clothes together. There won't be a need to display the garments any more, as they will be viewed on a screen, so many chain stores will go out of business. This personalised service will also be available online, taking the guesswork out of purchases for customers and reducing the number of garments that are returned.

Interviewer Talking of the internet, Gina, how will e-commerce affect the way we shop in the future?

Gina Well, we've already seen how consumers have started to use smartphones to purchase their goods, and this habit is only going to grow. The great advantage of shopping by phone is that you can do it while you're on the move – you don't have to make a special effort to go to the shops or wait until you're in front of your computer to buy something. In general, retail will become more mobile in the future, allowing more time to shop and increasing sales.

Interviewer Thank you, Gina Hansom, for sharing with us your predictions for the future of shopping.

Gina My pleasure.

Exercise 5 page 107

1 e 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 d

Exercise 6 page 107

1 knock down
2 snap up
3 campaign
4 petition
5 help out
6 hard up
7 set up
8 make ends meet

Exercise 7 page 107

1 result 2 reason 3 purpose 4 contrast

Exercise 10 page 107

1 Introduction
2 Current situation
3 Factors affecting people
4 Recommendations

C Culture Bank

1 Culture

RADA

Exercise 2 page 108

They learn the Stanislavski acting technique, i.e. how to recreate everything about a character's life. They train their voices and they learn how to use their bodies.

Exercise 3 page 108

1 has 2 by 3 for 4 only 5 be 6 who 7 to 8 a

Exercise 4 4.11 page 108

1 B 2 C 3 A

Transcript

Presenter Hello and welcome to the *On the Stage* podcast. This week, I'm joined by film critic Linda Marshall who is going to be talking to us about one of the most interesting aspects of an actor's work: getting into character. Good evening, Linda.

Linda Hello.

Presenter Now, what does *getting into character* actually mean?

Linda It means making your character believable to your audience. It's quite easy to imitate certain emotions and pretend to be affectionate or bad-tempered, but to create a 'real person' is much more complicated than that.

Presenter Students at RADA study the Stanislavski acting technique, don't they? How does that help?

Linda Well, Stanislavski said there were seven questions that an actor had to be able to answer about the character that they are going create. Some of them are about the character's personality and their lives such as *Who am I?*, *Where am I?* and *When is it?* Others look at what the character wants and ask *What do I want?* and *How will I achieve my goal?*

Presenter And some well-known actors are really passionate about their work and do quite a bit more than just answer Stanislavski's questions.

Linda Mmm, they certainly do. Meryl Streep, for example, is famous for her accents, but they take a lot of work. For the film about the Second World War, *Sophie's Choice*, she spent two months learning Polish, and then she would walk around her house for days reading poems with a Polish accent.

Presenter Why did she do that?

Linda Because she wanted to learn how to say emotional things like a Polish person speaking English would.

Presenter It worked because she was great in the film. Another actor whose preparations are also quite famous is Leonardo DiCaprio.

Linda Yes. For the film *Blood Diamond*, which was set in an African country at war, DiCaprio spent a lot of time with soldiers who had fought in wars in Africa. And he also spent time in a lot of psychiatric hospitals when he was preparing for the psychological thriller *Shutter Island* set on an island that is home to dangerous criminals with psychiatric problems.

Presenter Well, thank you very much, Linda. It's clear that being an actor involves a lot more work than most people realise!

Exercise 5 4.11 page 108

1 T
2 F It involved asking questions about their character.
3 T
4 F She would walk around her house reading poems in a Polish accent.
5 T
6 F He visited a psychiatric hospital to prepare for a film about a psychiatric hospital on an island.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

2 Culture

The Longitude Prize

Exercise 2 page 109

It suggested a competition called The Longitude Prize. Yes, it was successful.

Exercise 3 page 109

1 The British government decided to try to prevent the kinds of accidents that had happened at sea in 1707.
2 Because even Sir Isaac Newton had been unable to find a solution to the problem, so it was going to be difficult to find someone who could.
3 He was a carpenter rather than a well-known scientist.
4 Because conditions on board damaged the clocks.
5 The H probably refers to the first letter of the inventor's surname (Harrison), and the number 4 to the fact that it was the fourth sea clock that he had made.
6 A TV audience was asked to choose one challenge from a list of six.

Exercise 5 4.13 page 109

How can we prevent the rise of resistance to antibiotics?

Transcript

Presenter Hello, and welcome to the *Science Now* podcast. This week, I've got Dr Mary Kenny, the chief scientist at the Percival Foundation, in the studio with me to discuss last night's *The One Show* on the BBC.

Dr Kenny Good evening.

Presenter Now, before we begin discussing the programme, I'll just remind listeners what actually happened on *The One Show*. Last week, we talked about the government's plans to offer a prize of £10 million to the scientist, amateur or professional who can come up with a solution for one of the big challenges that are facing the world. The competition is called the Longitude Prize, and last night viewers of *The One Show* were asked to choose one challenge from a list of six for scientists to concentrate on. Dr Kenny, are you happy with the challenge that viewers chose?

Dr Kenny Well, before we discuss that, I'd just like to make a comment on the amount of money being offered for the Longitude Prize.

Presenter You don't agree with the idea of prize money?

Dr Kenny Quite the opposite, actually! I'm quite thrilled by the prize in itself, but although £10 million sounds like a lot of money, it is really a lot less than the £54 million that one single fighter plane costs, so it's not as if the government was being incredibly generous.
Presenter And what do you think about the viewers voting for antibiotics?
Dr Kenny Personally, I think it was a good choice. Obviously you could make a strong case for all of the problems, but I agree that it is urgent that we find new medicines that can replace antibiotics. Most scientists agree that antibiotics have added about twenty years to our lives, but the world's health organisations are quite alarmed about the fact that antibiotics are having less and less effect.
Presenter Is it that bad?
Dr Kenny Indeed it is. If antibiotics stop working, it means that medical operations will become much more dangerous experiences and we will probably have to stop doing some kinds of operations for good.
Presenter That certainly would be serious. Let's hope that somebody wins the prize soon!

Exercise 6 4.13 page 109

1 a 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a

Transcript

See exercise 5.

3 Culture

Erasmus

Exercise 2 page 110

They have inspired an exchange programme for European university students to study at different centres of learning.

Exercise 3 page 110

1 He wanted new friends, new experiences, and the chance to learn a new language.
2 He did such good work that his professors thought he would make a good teacher and wanted him to stay.
3 Students today haven't got the opportunity to spend so much time travelling and studying.
4 Students can spend from three months to an academic year at a university in another European country.
5 They are not charged extra fees by the universities they are visiting and they can get help to pay for accommodation.
6 Apart from the educational benefits, they also develop as people: they become more mature, independent and confident.

Exercise 4 4.15 page 110

basketball and soccer (football)

Transcript

Presenter Basketball legend Michael Jordan did it at the University of South Carolina, and golf superstar Tiger Woods did it at Stanford University. They both got sport scholarships and didn't need to pay for their university education. In fact, a large number of American students finance their studies by playing sport, but is it as much fun as it sounds? We sent reporter Lisa Howard to find out.
Reporter I'm here watching a basketball game at West Roxbury High School in the city of Boston. As you can hear, there is quite a crowd to see the West Roxbury senior team take on the Irish School of Boston for the league title. However, there is a lot more at stake here than being the best senior high school team in the city, as the father of one of the players told us.
Father Of course my son Sean and the other guys want to be champions, but that's not what today's game is all about. Today's game is about getting a sport scholarship. There are four university scouts here watching, and they might be offering scholarships to the best players when it's all over. It's going to cost us at least $40,000 a year to send Sean to university, so we could sure do with some help!
Reporter Sean's father spends most of the game biting his fingernails and screaming what Sean should have done when he makes a mistake. You can feel the tension in the sports hall, which, considering how important the game could be for the players' futures, is not surprising. However, even if a player gets a scholarship, there is still a lot of hard work ahead. Now, let's hear from Matt Marshall, who is on a football scholarship.
Matt I got a $15,000 scholarship for my first year, and obviously that was a great help for me and my family, but we should have asked more questions about what it involved. There really is a lot of pressure to play well because the coaches renew the scholarships every year, and if you have a bad season or you get injured, then there's no more money and you've got to find $15,000 for the following year!
Reporter Meanwhile, back at West Roxbury High School sports hall, the final whistle has gone and the players and their parents have got their fingers crossed. West Roxbury won the game and the league, but will any of the players win the most important prize of all?

Exercise 5 4.15 page 110

1 M 2 S 3 M 4 M 5 M / S 6 S

Transcript

See exercise 4.

4 Culture

Aborigines and Maoris

Exercise 2 page 111

One of the most important Aborigine customs is the walkabout: boys aged thirteen spend time alone in the desert and hunt for food to survive.
An important Maori custom is *Ta moko*, the practice of tattooing the face or body. The tattoos represent the family or tribe a person belongs to.

Exercise 3 page 111

1 these 2 although / though 3 than 4 was
5 all 6 have 7 same 8 about 9 on 10 to

Exercise 4 page 111

1 Maoris
2 Maoris
3 Aborigines
4 Aborigines
5 Maoris
6 Aborigines

Exercise 5 page 111

(Possible answers)

1 It represents all the Aboriginal tribes and might help to unite them.
2 It marks a change in status from adolescence to adulthood for males and it teaches them to survive in the desert.
3 Because they believe all natural things and living things are connected.
4 You would know by looking at their tattoos.

Exercise 6 4.17 page 111

He is proud of his culture. He knows a lot about it and speaks about it proudly.

Transcript

Presenter This evening on *Global Teenagers*, we are interviewing Nikau Kamana from New Zealand. Hello, Nikau, and thank you for agreeing to speak to us.
Nikau *Kia ora*! It's a pleasure to take part.
Presenter What is *kia ora*? Is it a Maori greeting?
Nikau Yes, it means *hello* in Maori. I'm a Maori, and our language is one of the two official languages of New Zealand.
Presenter Does everybody learn it at school?
Nikau No, not everybody, but there are lots of schools that do some or all of their subjects in Maori.
Presenter Now, what's life like for a Maori teenager?
Nikau I imagine it's the same as for teenagers all around the world, although I suppose our families make us very aware of our culture.
Presenter Can you give us an example?
Nikau Well, one very important thing for us is *whenua* – this is the Maori word for *land* and it's about our relationship with nature. It refers to the land and our connection to it. This is very important in our culture.
Presenter Yes, I believe that Maori people have always looked after the environment.
Nikau We have. At school the other day, we were talking about how indigenous people, like us and the Aborigines in Australia, have always had a close relationship to the land and always felt a close connection between all living things. These ideas are now spreading all over the planet, and when everybody realises that this connection exists, we will stop treating the planet badly.
Presenter What do you think people around the world know about the Maori culture?
Nikau There seems to be a very big interest in *ta moko*, traditional Maori tattooing. Lots of tourists come to New Zealand, especially for adventure holidays, and a lot of those tourists go home with a Maori tattoo on their bodies.
Presenter And of course Maoris are great rugby players.
Nikau We are indeed! There have been lots of great players, and before every match of the New Zealand national team, the All Blacks, all the players perform a *haka*, a traditional war dance.
Presenter Yes, I've seen it, and it certainly seems to frighten the opposition! Thank you very much, Nikau – it has been very interesting.
Nikau Don't mention it!

Exercise 7 4.17 page 111

1 It means *hello* in Maori.
2 It refers to the Maoris' connection with the land.
3 They often go on adventure holidays.
4 They are good at rugby.
5 A *haka* is a traditional Maori war dance.

Transcript

See exercise 6.

5 Culture

Race relations

Exercise 1 page 112

(Possible answers)

marches, demonstrations, strikes, boycotts, sit-ins, petitions

Exercise 2 page 112

3 They attracted a lot of media attention.

Exercise 3 page 112

(Possible answers)

1 They did not want to return to a segregated society that didn't allow them the same rights as white Americans.
2 They thought they were happening too slowly.
3 There was a problem because the southern states refused to implement the new legislation.
4 The Kennedy government was more worried about the nuclear threat from the USSR and paid little attention to what was happening at home.
5 CORE's objective was to draw people's attention to what was happening to black people in the south / to black people who were travelling in the south.
6 They were against the trip because they thought that it was dangerous and that the Freedom Riders could get hurt.

Exercise 4 4.19 page 112

1 E (Birmingham)
2 A (Washington)
3 D (Anniston, Alabama)
4 B (Greenboro and Rock Hill)
5 C (Atlanta)

Transcript

On 4 May 1961, a group of Americans, the Freedom Riders, left Washington, D.C. on two coaches.
As they pulled out of the station, there was a good mood amongst the group and they felt very close. They'd been warned about what might happen when they got down south, but they had spent a few days training how to deal non-violently with aggression, and they thought they had everything under control.
The Freedom Riders didn't experience any problems in Richmond and Farmville in Virginia. In Greensboro and Rock Hill, they felt that people had been expecting them and allowed them to use the facilities to avoid problems. Martin Luther King then met them when they arrived in Atlanta, and he warned them that in Alabama people wouldn't be trying to avoid problems at all.
When the bus arrived in Anniston, Alabama there was a crowd of around two hundred white men. They immediately

set about breaking the bus windows and then set it on fire. A group of men waited at the door, and those on board had the choice of being burned alive or beaten to death. Suddenly, the gas tank on the bus exploded and the crowd ran away, giving the Freedom Riders the chance to escape. At the same time, a police officer arrived and fired his gun into the air to keep the crowd back.
Meanwhile, the Freedom Riders on the other coach were feeling very wary as they entered Birmingham. A large crowd of white men was waiting, and they were ready for action. The local police chief, Bull Conner, had promised the crowd that they would have fifteen minutes to attack the Freedom Riders before he sent police officers in. Conner kept his promise, and many of the Freedom Riders still bear the marks of their injuries today.
The Freedom Riders had expected resistance to their trip, but had never expected so much violence. However, their suffering was rewarded. The images of the attacks were shown all around the world, and over three hundred Americans volunteered to take part in more Freedom Rides. The Kennedy government was forced to act, and five months later, the *Whites only* signs in the southern states were taken down and the law that allowed all Americans to use the same transport facilities was enforced everywhere.

Exercise 5 4.19 page 112

1 T 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 F 6 T

Transcript

See exercise 4.

6 Culture

Healthy cities

Exercise 2 page 113

1 was 2 been 3 to 4 be 5 since
6 had 7 only 8 from

Exercise 3 page 113

1 C 2 A 3 B 4 B 5 C 6 A

Exercise 4 4.21 page 113

1 She expected terrible smells and rats.
2 Solid fat causes the biggest problem.

Transcript

Presenter On tonight's edition of *City Secrets*, reporter Katie Marshall heads for a place that most people would prefer never to visit: the sewers.
Katie It's 1 a.m., and I'm about to join one of the maintenance teams that patrol the tunnels that carry London's waste away to be treated. With nearly fifty thousand kilometres of sewers to inspect, the maintenance teams are never short of work. In fact, some tunnels haven't been checked for fifteen years, and they need to be, because they were built in the 19th century.
Over a hundred and fifty years ago, the British Government ordered sewers to be constructed because a recent invention was polluting the River Thames. The arrival of the flushing toilet in people's bathrooms did a lot to improve hygiene in the home, but it was a disaster for the city. The waste from the toilets went straight into the river, which was also the main source for drinking water. Thousands of Londoners quickly started feeling fatigued and then started dying; they had the disease cholera. However, the politicians didn't act until the smell from the river was so bad that they felt nauseous during debates in the Houses of Parliament.
Down in the sewer, wearing my protective clothing, I'm surprised by the smell, or should I say the lack of one. I had been expecting a strong stink of human waste, but the team tell me that 90% of the liquid rushing past my feet is rainwater, which reduces the smell considerably. They also tell me that despite the popular myth, there aren't many rats. Apparently, they aren't keen on flowing water. However, the men do have an enemy that they have to fight every night: fat. The increase in fast-food restaurants has seen an increase in the amount of hot, liquid fat that is poured into the sewers, but when it arrives in the tunnels, it goes cold and forms solid blocks. Solid fat is dangerous because it blocks tubes, but unfortunately it's very hard to remove, and the men have to use axes to try and break it.
A few hours later, I'm back on the London street where we left the maintenance van. The dangers that I had imagined that I would face, rats and terrible smells, have not materialised, but I have discovered that not only is fast food bad for people's health, it threatens the health of the whole city as well.

Exercise 5 4.21 page 113

1 There are nearly fifty thousand kilometres of sewers.
2 Waste from the newly invented flushing toilet caused the pollution.
3 The smell from the river made the politicians feel nauseous.
4 90% of the liquid in sewers is rainwater.
5 Rats are less common.
6 It comes from fast food restaurants.

Transcript

See exercise 4.

7 Culture

Cowboys

Exercise 3 page 114

(Possible answers)
1 It suggests that people frequently died in gunfights in the Wild West.
2 Because only three organised gunfights took place in the 19th century.
3 It suggests that it wasn't a very violent place at all.
4 The writer suggests that Hollywood created an image that doesn't match reality.
5 Because their horses had to carry them for many hours a day.
6 Some people believe they had to make them more interesting if they wanted to make films about them. Others believe they wanted to create a role model that would serve the social and economic interests of the country.

Exercise 4 4.23 page 114

He acted in it and directed it.

Transcript

Presenter Hello and welcome to the *Cinema Giants* podcast. This week we are looking at one of the great actors and directors of recent years, Clint Eastwood. And in the studio to

discuss Clint Eastwood's career, I have Ellie Harris, author of *The Man with No Name*. Hello, Ellie.
Ellie Hello.
Presenter Now, the title of your book comes from one of the roles that made Clint Eastwood famous. How did that film come about?
Ellie Well, Eastwood had played the role of a cowboy in the popular TV series *Rawhide* in the 1950s, and that brought him to the attention of the Italian film-maker Sergio Leone. At the time, westerns were extremely popular both on TV and in the cinemas, and Leone proposed that they make three films that would be different from Hollywood westerns. They were more violent and didn't have much dialogue. Eastwood himself has admitted that they weren't classics, but they did make him internationally famous.
Presenter He became the model of what everybody thought a cowboy was like, didn't he?
Ellie Exactly. He was tough, tall, good-looking, and he was capable of looking after himself. He became a role model for what some people thought an American man should be like. They decided to market the three films as stories about an anonymous man, the man with no name, and this added to his image of someone without connections to anybody or to society. It seemed to say this man depends on nobody but himself.
Presenter As we all know, Eastwood went on to make many different kinds of films as an actor and director, but in 1992, he returned to the genre when he acted in and directed what many consider to be one of the best westerns ever made, *Unforgiven*.
Ellie Yes, he did, but it was a very different film from his earlier cowboy films. *Unforgiven* reflects the change that had taken place in America as far as cowboys were concerned. One of the main characters is an African American, played brilliantly by Morgan Freeman, and although there is a lot of gun fighting, the whole film shows how horrible and frightening violence is. Even the clothes that the characters wear reflect what cowboys really wore back in the 19th century, so this film is much closer to what that period of time was really like than other westerns.
Presenter Well, thank you, Ellie Harris – a very interesting look at one of Hollywood's most popular actors. Now, if you thought …

Exercise 5 4.23 page 114

1 T (Eastwood played the role of a cowboy in the TV series *Rawhide*.)
2 F (Leone wanted to make three films that would be different from Hollywood westerns.)
3 T (Eastwood has admitted that the films weren't classics.)
4 F (The character became the model of what some people thought a cowboy was like.)
5 F (There is a lot of gun fighting.)
6 T (The clothes that the characters wear reflect what cowboys really wore in the 19th century.)

Transcript
See exercise 4.

8 Culture

BBC Radio 1

Exercise 2 page 115

The 1990s because radical changes took place. The target audience became much younger: from 13–40 to 13–25.

Exercise 3 page 115

1 T
2 F People refused to listen to Radio 1 because they didn't think it was cool enough.
3 T
4 T
5 F The number of listeners has fallen as more people listen to streaming music services.

Exercise 4 4.25 page 115

C

Transcript
Presenter We're here at the BBC Radio 1's annual Teen Awards SSE Arena at Wembley. As I'm sure many of our listeners know, the prizes are awarded to the year's best vloggers, sport and music stars and to teenage heroes who have inspired everyone! Best of all, they have been voted for by Britain's teenagers! So let's find out what the fans here thought of the show. OK, what did you think was the best moment of the afternoon?
Girl Well, for me, it has to be when Jack G got his award for standing up to bullying. If I'd been him, I wouldn't have had the courage to start a campaign against the bullies in my school, so I really admire him for doing that.
Presenter Yes, just let me tell listeners a little bit more about Jack G. He was bullied at school, but instead of keeping quiet about it, he raised enough money to pay for the training of nine students so that they could become anti-bullying campaigners. He has also opened a room in his school that is called The Sanctuary, and it's a place where school kids can go and chat about their worries. Right, time for more opinions. Have you had a good time?
Boy Yeah, it's been great.
Presenter What have you enjoyed the most about it?
Boy The music. I really enjoyed hearing the winners play their songs live. The atmosphere in the arena was fantastic and the sound was great too.
Presenter And what do you think about the idea of combining celebrity awards with awards for teenagers who have done things to help society?
Boy I think it works because they are all people that we admire. Obviously, we all know that what that boy did to help his schoolmates deal with bullying is much more important than someone singing a pop song, but if it just concentrated on the inspirational heroes, they wouldn't get as much publicity for their causes. This way, it's positive for the celebrities' image because they appear next to the teen heroes who have done good things in society, but also more people learn about the teen heroes. Everybody wins, don't they?
Presenter Well, those are just a couple of opinions from fans at BBC Radio 1's Teen Awards that once again seem to have been a great success!

Exercise 5 4.25 page 115

1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c

Transcript

See exercise 4.

9 Culture

Shopping with a difference

Exercise 1 page 116

(Possible answers)

1 A car boot sale because items are sold cheaply there.
2 An auction because it will have a website, and items are bought by people who aren't present.
3 A car boot sale because it is a bit like a flea market and haggling is acceptable at places like that.

Exercise 2 page 116

1 Those / These 2 off 3 It 4 the 5 few
6 both 7 as 8 has 9 were 10 how

Exercise 3 page 116

$179 million the amount paid for a painting by Picasso which became the world's most expensive painting sold in a public sale

18th century the century when, thanks to the French revolution, London became the capital of the world's art trade

£13 million the amount of money that Christie's and Sotheby's had to pay as a fine for illegally controlling art prices

80% the percentage of the world's art that is sold for $5,000 or less

Exercise 4 4.27 page 116

1 CBS 2 DSM 3 DSM 4 CBS 5 CBS 6 DSM

Transcript

Presenter Do you enjoy unusual shopping experiences? Then we're sure you'll enjoy this week's *Shopper's Podcast*. Our reporters have been out to find alternative shopping experiences, and this is what they've discovered. Here's Alice, who's been to Manchester!

Alice It's a sunny Sunday morning, it's 8 a.m. and I'm standing in a large car park. Cars are parked all around me, and they've all got their boots open. Yes, I'm standing in the middle of a car boot sale, and the first customers are already beginning to have a look around at what's on sale. But why do people take part in car boot sales?

Man Well, the reason we have come is to sell a few things we don't use any more. For example, I've got a pile of old vinyl records here that I never listen to because I haven't got a record player … In fact, I don't know anybody who has! But a friend told me that vinyl records are back in fashion and collectors do come to car boot sales, so who knows!

Presenter And what about you?

Girl We've come to see if we can pick up any bargains in electronics … in computers to be more exact. A friend of mine told me he got a second-hand laptop for a really good price from here a few weeks ago, and I'd love to find one too. I've got a desktop at home, and a laptop would be useful for school, but having just spent most of my money on a new mobile, I can't afford a new one.

Presenter Thanks, Alice. So that's one place that's great for buying and selling. Now, here's Max with something completely different.

Max London is famous for its street markets, so you might think that Dover Street Market is just the same as all the others, but you would be wrong. It was set up in a building with six floors that are decorated to look like stalls from a street market. They close the building occasionally to change the way everything looks, and they get theatre designers to come in and help them. So what do people look for here?

Young man I just come to browse because most of the goods are too pricey for me, except perhaps for some of the books! I'm studying fashion design and I come to look at the different designer clothes collections. I'd love to see my own designs on display here one day!

Young woman We're looking for a Beatles T-shirt for a friend's birthday; he loves them! We were told that they have some really cool ones here, but the thing that has shocked us the most is the price of things – the cheapest T-shirt costs £66! Well, the designs are unique and our friend is unique too, so we're going to buy it for him. I suppose if you want something that is different, you have to pay more for it!

Max Thanks very much! So as you can see, there's plenty on offer – if you're willing to pay for it!

Presenter Thanks, Max! So there you have it, something for bargain hunters and something for people who are happy to splash out a little more than usual. Which one will you visit?

Exercise 5 4.27 page 116

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 b

Transcript

See exercise 4.

W Workbook answer keys and transcripts

Introduction

IA Vocabulary

Verb patterns

Exercise 1 page 4
1 encouraged 2 denied 3 agreed 4 mention
5 offers 6 keep

Exercise 2 page 4
1 thinking 2 to buy 3 regretting 4 to do
5 looking 6 to give 7 to offer 8 to get

Exercise 3 page 4
1 e 2 c 3 a 4 f 5 d 6 b

Exercise 4 page 4
1 want 2 warned 3 insisted 4 apologise
5 begged 6 blames 7 thanked 8 accused

Exercise 5 page 4
1 doing 2 doing 3 to do 4 doing 5 doing 6 to do

Exercise 6 page 4
1 going / to go 2 being 3 snowing / to snow 4 falling
5 to take 6 turning into / to turn into 7 spending

Exercise 7 page 4
1 to explain 2 to take 3 scoring 4 to have
5 meeting 6 to buy

IB Grammar

Present and future tenses

Exercise 1 page 5
1 do you usually do 2 I see 3 We're learning
4 does the World Cup Final start 5 Does your aunt work
6 is always using 7 Are you going

Exercise 2 page 5
1 will pour 2 will phone 3 are going to miss
4 will lend 5 will do 6 am going to paint

Exercise 3 page 5
1 a 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b

Exercise 4 page 5
1 b 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 a 7 c 8 b

Exercise 5 page 5
1 I prefer 2 there's going to be 3 ends 4 practises
5 I'll go 6 you find out 7 isn't going to eat 8 leave

Exercise 6 page 5
1 are enjoying 2 are coming 3 live 4 don't see
5 are going to stay / staying 6 arrive 7 will love

IC Vocabulary

Life events

Exercise 1 page 6
1 g 2 a 3 e 4 f 5 b 6 c 7 d

Exercise 2 page 6
1 obsessed with 2 happy about / with
3 sensitive to 4 curious about 5 shocked by
6 good at 7 addicted to 8 aware of

Exercise 3 page 6
get divorced, engaged, married
leave home, school start a business, a family, school

Exercise 4 page 6
1 away 2 up 3 up 4 up 5 down 6 in

Exercise 5 page 6
1 retiring 2 inherited 3 learning to drive 4 split up
5 settle down 6 emigrated

Exercise 6 page 6
1 pass away 2 get married 3 go to university
4 get divorced 5 grow up 6 buy a house or flat

Exercise 7 page 6
1 left 2 job 3 started 4 got 5 married 6 split
7 study 8 fell 9 was 10 bought 11 settled 12 career

ID Grammar

Past tenses

Exercise 1 page 7
1 was having, arrived 2 dropped, was running
3 was reading, started 4 was shining, decided
5 hurt, was cutting 6 was living, met

Exercise 2 page 7
1 had finished, decided 2 arrived, had started
3 had lost, got 4 was, had passed 5 had taken, put
6 went, had completed 7 didn't know, had told

Exercise 3 page 7
1 has worked, left 2 called, has decided
3 has never driven 4 bought, haven't worn
5 haven't heard 6 spilled, I've broken

Exercise 4 page 7
1 Have you finished 2 have been reading
3 Have you visited 4 have been going 5 have bought
6 have never visited 7 have made 8 have been eating

Exercise 5 page 7
1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 c 6 a 7 a 8 b

Exercise 6 page 7
1 've been sitting 2 've been trying 3 ran out
4 cooked 5 's not tried 6 'd guessed

Unit 1 Fame

1A Vocabulary

What are they like?

Exercise 1 page 8
1 industrious 2 sympathetic 3 cautious 4 insecure
5 outgoing 6 creative

Exercise 2 page 8
Positive considerate, creative, outgoing, quick-witted, selfless, spontaneous **Negative** bad-tempered, bossy, cruel, stingy, self-satisfied, untrustworthy

Exercise 3 1.02 page 8
Speaker 1 judgemental **Speaker 2** vain
Speaker 3 spontaneous **Speaker 4** stubborn

Transcript
1 Kevin is very quick to think negative things about people. Even when he talks about his best friend, he always tells you about his faults. And if somebody hasn't got any faults, he invents them, so you can't always believe what he says.
2 Olivia can't go past a mirror without looking at herself in it. She always worries about her appearance. I was in town with her the other day and she spent the whole time looking at her own reflection in the shop windows!
3 You never know what will happen when you visit my grandmother. She'll suddenly decide to go to the zoo or to try and make some dish we've seen on a cooking show. She's fun! She's also great when you've got a problem as she'll always listen carefully and is really kind.
4 I've never met a person like Max. Even when he knows he's wrong, he seems incapable of admitting it. What's worse, he gets angry with anyone who suggests he's mistaken.

Exercise 4 1.02 page 8
1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a

Transcript
See exercise 3

Exercise 5 page 8
1 eccentric 2 shrewd 3 quick-witted 4 pushy
5 passionate 6 considerate

Exercise 6 page 8
1 well 2 open 3 hard 4 quick 5 thick 6 self

Exercise 7 page 8
1 bad-mannered 2 thick-skinned 3 single-minded
4 light-hearted 5 self-confident 6 easy-going

1B Grammar

Past perfect simple and past perfect continuous

Exercise 1 page 9
1 had broken 2 hadn't left 3 had chosen 4 had lost
5 had paid 6 had brought 7 had hit 8 had bought

Exercise 2 page 9
1 had been travelling 2 had been waiting
3 had been working 4 had been cooking
5 had been looking 6 had been learning
7 had been hurting 8 had been trying

Exercise 3 page 9
1 Had you eaten breakfast before you went out?
2 They hadn't been waiting long when the bus arrived.
3 He was cold because he'd just been swimming.
4 Where had he been living before he moved to London?
5 She hadn't expected to get so many presents.
6 Had they been dating for long before they got married?

Exercise 4 page 9
1 I had never snorkelled before Mia took me last year.
2 Clara was annoyed because the book she'd ordered hadn't arrived.
3 How long had you been playing the guitar before we met?
4 By the time the shops opened, they had been queuing for nearly an hour.
5 I looked for my bag, but I'd forgotten where I'd put it.
6 Greg was tired last night because he had been playing basketball.

Exercise 5 page 9
1 had thought 2 hadn't imagined 3 had been enjoying 4 had found 5 had been living 6 had starred 7 had been dating

Exercise 6 page 9
1 hadn't played tennis 2 had eaten her dinner
3 had been saving for ages 4 because he had broken his arm. 5 got dark, we had been sitting 6 had never visited / had not visited

1C Listening

Press intrusion

Exercise 1 page 10
1 journalists 2 tabloid 3 libel 4 harassed 5 paparazzi
6 laws 7 investigative 8 scandal 9 interest

Exercise 2 1.03 page 10
1 bad-mannered 2 creative 3 judgemental
4 open-minded 5 propaganda

Transcript
1 **Man** Hey, did you enjoy the party? Who was there? Tell me all about it!
Woman It was good fun, except that I met Rosie's new boyfriend. He didn't say much. I thought he seemed bad-mannered.

2 **Girl 1** Did you see the outfit that Rihanna was wearing at the Music Awards? Rather bright, wasn't it?
Girl 2 I did see it. I thought it was great, actually. Very creative, just like her personality.
3 **Boy 1** I wish that footballer would keep his views to himself. He's always got too much to say about the other players.
Boy 2 Yes, he's a bit too judgemental in interviews. It's fine to have opinions, but he goes too far, doesn't he?
4 **Man** Listen to this. The Education Minister is now saying that teachers deserve a pay rise. That's a complete change of opinion!
Woman I'm glad to hear it. He's been listening to public opinion, obviously. It's not often that you get an open-minded politician.
5 **Woman 1** I'm so tired of the tabloid news. It's very one-sided. They just repeat the government's views.
Woman 2 I know. The news just seems like propaganda these days, doesn't it?

Exercise 3 1.03 page 10
1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 a

Transcript
See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 1.04 page 10
1 E 2 B 3 D 4 C

Transcript
1 Who reads the news these days, anyway? No-one reads newspapers anymore, especially not people of my age. For one thing, they're far too long. Who has time to read all of that information? And who pays attention to the news? It's always so depressing. All the news that is reported is bad news. Why do they do that? Why not have a bit of balance? I think that's why gossip columnists have taken over from serious journalists. Newspapers and magazines try and find out lots of gossip and scandal about celebrities in order to attract people's attention, and they hope that this will make people buy their newspapers. That's just a waste of everybody's time in my view.
2 I wish people would pay more attention to what's happening in the world and make more effort to change the things they don't like. There's so little interest, especially with young people my age. It really upsets me. If we don't take the time to shout about what will make the world a better place, then who will? That's why I think celebrities could have a useful role to play in today's society. Instead of complaining about press intrusion and moaning that they're always in the media spotlight, why don't they use the press attention for a good cause and encourage their fans to copy them? Personally, I think it should be a duty of all rich, famous people to do something good for others less fortunate than themselves.
3 I just don't get the whole celebrity thing. Why are people interested in the fake lives of other people? Because that's what they are – fake. I can't help laughing when I see photos in magazines of all the perfect celebrities who have been photographed in their perfect houses with their perfect partners. They stand in the middle of their living rooms dressed as if they were about to go out to the Oscars with their arm round their husband or wife, saying what a perfect relationship they have. Then, two months later, you hear that they've split up! Hilarious.
4 What's wrong with a bit of gossip and people-watching? Wasn't it Oscar Wilde who said 'There is only one thing in life worse than being talked about, and that is not being talked about'? People have been interested in other people's lives since the beginning of time. Human interest stories are just that – stories that are interesting to all of us humans. People always want to talk about themselves – what they do, what they think, what they've got. Celebrities are no different. I look through magazines in the hairdresser's or dentist's waiting room like every other person there. Those papers and magazines are there because people look at them. And anybody who says they don't pick one up is not being entirely honest!

1D Grammar

used to and *would*

Exercise 1 page 11
1 used to be 2 didn't use to have 3 didn't use to use 4 didn't use to want 5 used to have 6 used to be

Exercise 2 page 11
1 b 2 b 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 a

Exercise 3 page 11
1 use to be 2 he use to live 3 used to lose a lot of games 4 He used to want 5 she use to be 6 didn't use to have

Exercise 4 page 11
1 used to find / would find 2 used to know 3 didn't use to become / wouldn't become 4 didn't use to be 5 didn't use to rise 6 didn't use to crash 7 didn't use to need

Exercise 5 page 11
1 used to eat 2 used to / would visit 3 didn't use to think 4 would / used to bite 5 used to / would make 6 used to know

Exercise 6 page 11
1 Most of us used to believe in Santa Claus when we were younger.
2 People didn't use to be so obsessed with celebrities before the internet.
3 Did you use to enjoy eating vegetables as a child?
4 He studied engineering for two years before he became an actor.
5 My sister used to hate having her hair cut when she was little.
6 Did famous actors use to earn so much money in the past?

1E Word Skills

Position and order of adjectives

Exercise 1 page 12
1 c 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 c 6 b

Exercise 2 page 12
1 b 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 b

Exercise 3 page 12
1 white Turkish 2 ancient Greek 3 tiny young
4 famous Italian 5 delicious purple

Exercise 4 page 12
1 ✓ 2 living 3 ✓ 4 a lonely 5 happy 6 ✓

Exercise 5 page 12
1 sure 2 asleep 3 content 4 aware 5 alone
6 sorry 7 irritable 8 cross

1F Reading

Vloggers

Exercise 1 page 13
1 feedback 2 interaction 3 Subscribers 4 accessibility
5 platforms 6 channel 7 content 8 provider

Exercise 2 page 13
They need to be passionate about their topic, hard-working and dedicated.

Exercise 3 page 13
1 c 2 d 3 a 4 a

1G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 1 page 14
1 sure 2 looks 3 sort of 4 something 5 most likely 6 say

Exercise 2 page 14
1 f 2 b 3 a 4 e, c 5 d

Exercise 3 1.05 page 14
1 ecstatic 2 wonderful 3 thrilled 4 miserable

Transcript
Student In both photos, you can see a group of fans. In the first photo, the fans are waiting for the celebrities to arrive, whereas in the second photo, the celebrity must be there already. The fans are screaming and shouting – they're absolutely ecstatic. It looks like a really wonderful experience for them.
Examiner Why do you think fans get so excited about seeing their favourite celebrities?
Student I suppose it's like a dream come true for them. They see their favourite stars on TV and the internet all the time, and they seem so distant … almost unreal. So when they see them in real life, they feel completely thrilled. Also, I'm sure they get more excited about it when they're with a group of friends. If you had to wait for hours on your own, you'd be totally miserable!

Exercise 4 1.05 page 14
b, c

Transcript
See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 14
1 The common theme is celebrities and their fans.
2 There are celebrities and lots of fans in both photos. Some of the fans have pens and paper for autographs. Both celebrities have sunglasses. 3 In photo B there are lots of phones and a girl is taking a selfie. The celebrity is a man, whereas in photo A it's a woman.

1H Writing

A formal letter

Exercise 1 page 15
1 D 2 A 3 C 4 B

Exercise 2 page 15
1 think about talking 2 I think 3 be good for 4 suggest
5 given 6 I can't wait to hear 7 as soon as possible

Exercise 3 page 15
1 d 2 c 3 f 4 a 5 b 6 h 7 g 8 e

Review Unit 1

Exercise 1 page 16
1 b 2 c 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 a

Exercise 2 page 16
1 bad-tempered 2 thick-skinned 3 well-behaved
4 open-minded 5 hard-working 6 easy-going

Exercise 3 page 16
1 privacy 2 libel 3 regulators 4 journalism 5 eye
6 laws

Exercise 4 page 16
1 frightened 2 angry 3 lonely 4 happy 5 sleeping

Exercise 5 page 16
1 subscribers 2 interaction 3 provider 4 content
5 accessibility

Exercise 6 page 16
1 hilarious 2 exhausted 3 furious 4 starving
5 fascinated 6 terrified

Exercise 7 page 16
1 most likely 2 some kind 3 be sure 4 say that
5 looks like

Exercise 8 page 17
1 had been making 2 had won 3 had accepted
4 had been taking 5 had become
6 had been worrying 7 had suggested 8 hadn't told

Exercise 9 page 17
1 lived 2 were 3 Did you use to go
4 didn't use to hang out 5 used to see / would see
6 did you use to do 7 used to watch / would watch

Exercise 10 page 17
1 are untrustworthy 2 is single-minded
3 hadn't seen her since 4 had been singing for
5 I used to bite 6 didn't use to be

Unit 2 Problems

2A Vocabulary

It drives me crazy!

Exercise 1 page 18
1 stunned 2 amused 3 furious 4 envious
5 content 6 ashamed

Exercise 2 page 18
1 thrilled 2 indecisive 3 upbeat 4 miserable
5 disappointed

Exercise 3 page 18
1 humiliated 2 frustrated 3 irritated 4 upbeat
5 envious 6 bitter

Exercise 4 page 18
1 exasperated 2 disappointed 3 stressed
4 hysterical 5 disillusioned 6 bitter

Exercise 5 page 18
1 e 2 a 3 f 4 g 5 h 6 b 7 i 8 d 9 c

Exercise 6 1.06 page 18
1 is in two minds 2 is over the moon
3 gets on his nerves 4 is down in the dumps

Transcript
1 **A** Hi, Jack. Are you going to Sam's party at the weekend?
B I really don't know at the moment. I've been invited, but I'm not sure if I'll go.
A I don't think he'll be very happy if you don't go. In fact, he'll probably be furious!
2 **A** Hi, Ann! How are you feeling about your results?
B I'm so happy! I never expected to do that well!
A Kate will be really jealous! She thought she was going to be top of the class and you've come first in everything!
3 **A** Meg's being a bit irritating today, isn't she?
B Today? She's always complaining about things! It really annoys me!
A I know what you mean. When I hear her worrying about such unimportant things, I want to shout at her!
4 **A** Ewan seems very sad this morning.
B Yes, he had an interview for a summer job yesterday and he didn't get it. I'm not that surprised because he was really nervous about it and didn't relax until it was over.

Exercise 7 1.06 page 18
1 a 2 c 3 a 4 b

Transcript
See exercise 6.

2B Grammar

Comparison

Exercise 1 page 19
1 (the) hardest 2 sooner 3 more slowly 4 better
5 worse 6 faster 7 (the) nearest

Exercise 2 page 19
1 d 2 g 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 e 7 f

Exercise 3 page 19
1 This cap is slightly more expensive than that one.
2 The bus will take much longer than a taxi.
3 My brother finds spiders far scarier than I do.
4 Walking is a lot less energetic than cycling.
5 Her shopping took a little longer than she'd planned.
6 Apparently tomorrow will be even hotter than today!
7 I was no less surprised at the news than you.

Exercise 4 page 19
1 c 2 b 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 b

Exercise 5 page 19
1 bad as that 2 faster we walk, the quicker 3 healthier than it / not as unhealthy as it 4 more comfortable than
5 as old as 6 like as spicy as

Exercise 6 page 19
1 nowhere 2 like 3 than 4 more 5 fewer 6 far
7 as 8 the

2C Listening

Keep calm!

Exercise 1 1.07 page 20
1 Do you want tea or coffee? 2 'Is your number 07765?' 'No, it's 07756.' 3 That one's my jacket. The leather one.
4 'Is your name Mike?' 'No, it's Mark.' 5 Is that yours or mine?

Transcript
See Workbook page 20.

Exercise 2 1.08 page 20
1 laces a 2 need c 3 tall, blonde hair a
4 tomorrow, Wednesday b 5 my, Edward's c
6 black, brown, brown b

Transcript
1 **A** Which are your shoes?
B The ones with the **laces**.
2 **A** I think I need a new phone.
B What? You've got a new phone?
A No, I said I **need** a new phone!
3 **A** Can you give me a description of the thief, please?
B Yes, he was **tall** and he had **blonde hair**.
4 **A** Shall we go shopping **tomorrow** or on **Wednesday**?
B Let's go tomorrow.
5 **A** Don't forget your keys.
B But they're not **my** keys. They must be **Edward's**.
6 **A** I'll get your suitcase. Is it the **black** one or the **brown** one?
B The **brown** one.

Exercise 3 page 20
1 Do you want a sandwich or a burger? b
2 **A** Is your locker number 14? **B** No, number 40. c
3 Is this your drink or mine? b
4 Have you seen my scarf? It's green. Light green. a
5 **A** Are you going to the leisure centre this afternoon?
B No, this morning. c
6 My house has a red door and it's number 5. a

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercise 4 1.09 page 20

Transcript

1 Do you want a sandwich or a burger?
2 **A** Is your locker number 14?
B No, number 40.
3 Is this your drink or mine?
4 Have you seen my scarf? It's green. Light green.
5 **A** Are you going to the leisure centre this afternoon?
B No, this morning.
6 My house has a red door and it's number 5.

Exercise 5 1.10 page 20

1 c 2 c 3 c 4 b

Transcript

Max Are you OK, Josh? You don't look great.
Josh Yeah … I'm fine …
Max Are you sure? Come on, we've got chemistry next.
Josh Erm … I think I'll go home. I must be getting a cold.
Max What? I don't believe you. What's the matter, Josh? You've been acting strangely for a couple of weeks now. What's up?
Josh OK, Max … You mustn't tell anyone! But I'm really worried. I'm in a bit of trouble …
Max What kind of trouble? Tell me.
Josh Well, you know those new friends that I've been hanging around with after school?
Max Yes, and I don't know why. They're not your friends, and they're a bit scary.
Josh I know, I know. I just thought they were cool, you know. And they started talking to me and I was flattered.
Max So, what happened?
Josh Well, the other day we went to the shops and they stole something, and then they dared me to steal something as well.
Max Oh, no. But you didn't, did you?
Josh Well, that's the thing … I did. I don't know why. Well … I do. It was because they were making me, and I was a bit scared of them. And as if that wasn't bad enough, now they're saying that I have to steal something for them every week, or they'll tell my dad …
Max What?
Josh … and he'll be so upset and disappointed with me! I don't know what to do.
Max Hang on a minute. First of all, you can't do what these guys are saying. You'll end up doing worse and worse things. You have to get out of it now. What did you steal?
Josh Some cans of drink …
Max Look, this is what I think. First of all, I think you should tell your dad. Tell him all about it.
Josh But he'll be furious.
Max He'll be more upset if he finds out later on. And he can help you deal with those boys. I think he'll understand more than you think.
Josh But I'm really scared of them.
Max I know. But there's nothing you can do about it on your own. You need help from somewhere – school or the police, maybe.
Josh Oh no …
Max Look, I'll come with you and we'll tell your dad.
Josh Would you? That would be brilliant. He likes you. That would help a great deal.
Max Yep, after school today. Come on, we're late for chemistry …

2D Grammar

Infinitives and *-ing* forms

Exercise 1 page 21

1 meeting 2 talking 3 to get 4 having
5 to become 6 to think 7 to make

Exercise 2 page 21

1 living 2 Going 3 Losing 4 making 5 Driving
6 finishing 7 Keeping

Exercise 3 page 21

1 d shut 2 e ringing 3 a shaking 4 f coming
5 b score 6 c crawling

Exercise 4 page 21

1 not say 2 pretend 3 wait 4 let 5 not cause
6 leave 7 not be

Exercise 5 page 21

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 a 5 c 6 b

Exercise 6 page 21

1 Why don't you ask the teacher if you don't understand?
2 Would you rather have chips or potatoes?
3 She didn't mean to upset anyone.
4 She didn't remember to post the parcel yesterday.
5 You'd better not spend ages on the computer before bed.
6 Alex has stopped talking to him since they fell out.

2E Word Skills

Preposition and noun phrases

Exercise 1 page 22

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b

Exercise 2 page 22

1 under the impression that the party 2 have been dating for a while 3 I'm a bit busy at the moment 4 but on second thoughts I decided 5 for one thing it's got a 6 on condition that you give it

Exercise 3 page 22

1 by 2 on 3 in 4 in 5 of 6 at

Exercise 4 page 22

1 by the time 2 ✓ 3 in the end 4 at the end
5 at the time 6 ✓

Exercise 5 page 22

1 a while 2 common 3 fault 4 vain 5 doubt
6 the impression 7 time

Exercise 6 page 22

1 while 2 moment 3 time 4 luck 5 thing

2F Reading

Solving crime

Exercise 1 page 23

1 cut 2 violent 3 rate 4 petty 5 wave 6 combat 7 prevention 8 commit

Exercise 2 page 23

It could cause crime to increase in some areas if the police only concentrate on reported crimes.

Exercise 3 page 23

1 C 2 A 3 B 4 A 5 C 6 C

2G Speaking

Role-play

Exercise 1 page 24

1 e 2 g 3 h 4 f 5 a 6 d 7 b 8 c 9 i

Exercise 2 1.11 page 24

Can I have a word with you about … I didn't want to bring it up, but …; Well, it's just that …; You should have said something earlier. You must feel that …; And could we possibly agree on …; I thought perhaps we could …

Transcript

Erika Can I have a word with you about something, please?
Examiner Of course, what is it?
Erika I didn't want to bring it up, but I feel that I'm doing all of the organising for our holiday.
Examiner Do you? Like what?
Erika Well, it's just that I've already researched the holiday and found the hotel and the flights. Now I've booked and paid for it, too. I was wondering if we could divide up the tasks more evenly.
Examiner Oh, dear. You should have said something earlier.
Erika I did!
Examiner Oh, I'm sorry. You must feel that I've been very lazy. What else needs doing, then?
Erika You need to transfer some money to me now, don't you? I don't have anything left in my bank account and I'm supposed to be buying my sister a birthday present soon! And I am arranging the insurance for the holiday, aren't I? You'll need to pay half of that too.
Examiner OK. Thank you for arranging it. Just let me know how much I owe you.
Erika OK, I'll do that. And could we possibly agree on how we're getting to the airport? You said you wanted to go by train, didn't you? But I thought perhaps we could go by coach. It's much cheaper than the train, isn't it?
Examiner I suppose so. But I have a railcard. Let me have a look and see how much discount I can get for us.
Erika OK, great. And we need to buy some currency, don't we? Maybe next week?
Examiner Why don't we both go to the bank and sort it out together?
Erika That's a good idea. Let's do that. And why don't you come round to my house one evening this week and we can research things to do and see while we're there?
Examiner Thanks. I'd love to.

Exercise 3 page 24

1 d 2 a 3 c 4 b

Other topic discussed: researching things to do while they're there

Exercise 4 1.11 page 24

Structures to emphasise Oh, dear, … I'm sorrry, … Thank you for …

Question tags don't you? aren't I? didn't you? isn't it? don't we?

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 5 page 24

1 d 2 b 3 e 4 a 5 c

Exercise 6 page 24

1 We're supposed to keep our travel documents safe at all times.
2 We're supposed to leave a tip after the meal.
3 We're supposed to pay for the holiday by the 25th.

2H Writing

Essay: for and against

Exercise 2 page 25

1 The first advantage … 2 No one can deny that … 3 It is also true that … 4 While this may be true … 5 Although it is true that … 6 …, we should also remember that …

Exercise 3 page 25

1 I'll do the dishes provided that you clean the kitchen.
2 Even though he seems nice, I still don't trust him.
3 Always try everything, even if it might not work out.
4 He'll fix your bike on condition that you lend it to him on Saturday.
5 Provided that I study all week, I'll pass the exam.

Review Unit 2

Exercise 1 page 26

1 disillusioned 2 stressed 3 humiliated 4 envious 5 alarmed 6 bitter 7 content 8 stunned

Exercise 2 page 26

1 over the moon 2 tearing her hair out 3 in two minds 4 on edge 5 gets on my nerves 6 down in the dumps

Exercise 3 page 26

1 at 2 for 3 in 4 On 5 under 6 by 7 Of

Exercise 4 page 26

1 violent 2 commit 3 petty 4 prevention 5 wave 6 combat

Exercise 5 page 26

1 word 2 bring 3 perhaps 4 just 5 said 6 must

Exercise 6 page 26

1 faster than you 2 the worst singer in my family 3 as outgoing as my best friend 4 the safer you'll be 5 more carefully than my mum 6 the most critical person I know

Exercise 7 page 27

1 nowhere 2 nothing 3 even 4 nearly 5 far

Exercise 8 page 27

1 to ask 2 arguing 3 Swimming 4 get 5 waste
6 to pack

Exercise 9 page 27

1 b 2 c 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 c 7 b 8 b 9 a 10 b

Exam Skills Trainer 1

Exercise 1 page 28

A Or the Singaporean tourist who died ...
B The alternative to taking the unnecessary risks
C ... a public education campaign ...
D ... more and more people are putting their lives at risk ...
E ... thousands of 'likes' ... something to be admired

Exercise 2 page 28

1 D 2 A 3 E 4 C

Exercise 3 page 28

1 distinguish fact from opinion 2 determine context
3 define the gist

Exercise 4 1.12 page 28

1 B 2 C 3 A

Transcript

1 Can I have your attention, please? Thank you. As you know, we're here tonight to talk about noisy neighbours, and what we can do about them. According to the UK Noise Act of 1996, a neighbourhood should be quiet at night – that is, between the hours of 11 p.m. and 7 a.m. Now, it really isn't worth complaining if your neighbour has a birthday party once a year. As far as I'm concerned, it's when the noise occurs on a regular basis that you have the right to take action. The best way of dealing with the problem is having a friendly chat with the person or people involved. Personally, I wouldn't involve the police unless the neighbour refuses to co-operate.

2 **Dave** Um. I don't believe we've met. I'm, Dave, your new neighbour.
Megan Yes, I know. I'm Megan.
Dave Which flat are you in?
Megan I'm in 4A with my husband, Alex.
Dave Right. In my case, it's just me and my dog, Sammy.
Megan Ah, yes. The dog.
Dave What's wrong? Sammy hasn't been bothering you, has he?
Megan I'm afraid he has. He barks incessantly all day. He really is quite a nuisance.
Dave Well, there isn't much I can do about that, I'm afraid. I have to go to work.
Megan Of course you do, but listen to him now! The doors haven't opened yet, and you can hear him already. You have to do something about it.

3 A resident of a quiet Scottish village has been ordered to cut back her thirteen-metre-high garden hedge after a dispute that has lasted for over thirty years. Catriona MacGregor of Buchlyvie, Stirlingshire, stopped cutting back the hedge around ten years after it was planted, and since then it has grown out of control. Neighbours complained that the hedge prevented sunlight from reaching their houses, with one neighbour having to keep the lights on all day. Miss MacGregor has until October to cut the hedge to a reasonable height – between two and three metres, according to the judge's ruling. If she refuses to comply with the order, Stirling Council will go onto her property, cut back the hedge and issue Miss MacGregor with the bill.

Exercise 5 page 28

b – a isn't in the 'it' form, c is in the present tense, d doesn't make sense

Exercise 6 page 29

1 C 2 D 3 C 4 A 5 B 6 B 7 A 8 C

Exercise 7 page 29

1 kind of busy 2 put up with 3 get in touch with
4 but 5 loads and loads of 6 a drag

Unit 3 Customs and culture

3A Vocabulary

Express yourself

Exercise 1 page 30

1 shrug your shoulders 2 cover your mouth
3 cross your legs 4 scratch your head
5 give a thumbs up 6 point

Exercise 2 page 30

head nod, shake face pout, scowl, wink hand point, wave

Exercise 3 page 30

1 bit 2 yawning 3 grinned 4 shook / nodded
5 shook / nodded 6 frowned

Exercise 4 page 30

1 boredom 2 anxiety 3 annoyance 4 friendliness
5 disgust 6 surprise

Exercise 5 1.13 page 30

1 D 2 B 3 A 4 C

Transcript

1 I'm not bothered about what we do. I'm not particularly interested in that film, but I don't feel like going to the theatre. I'll let you decide, because I don't really mind. If we decide to go to the theatre, we'll have to buy the tickets soon – although, to be honest, I wasn't expecting you to show any interest in going to a musical.

2 I really don't know what I have to do. I've tried pressing this button and nothing happens ... but that's what it says I have to do in the manual. To be honest, I think that if I press it too much, I'll break it. Really, I'm useless with technology and I don't know how anything works!

3 What?!! You're joking!!! No ... I can't believe he did that! ... I know! I would never have thought David was capable of doing such a thing! He seems to think that by making people frightened of him, he'll be able to get what he wants. He doesn't realise that if he continues like this, he'll end up with no friends at all.

4 Well, Kate, you didn't work hard enough, did you? If you don't put the work in, you won't get good results. I have to say, I'm disappointed with you. You are an intelligent girl. If

you get more involved in your work and pay more attention, you will do well. If you don't, you won't. It's as simple as that!

Exercise 6 1.13 page 30
1 surprise 2 ignorance 3 fear 4 interest

Transcript
See exercise 5.

Exercise 7 page 30
1 snore 2 cough, sneeze, sniff 3 clear your throat 4 slurp 5 tut 6 sigh

3B Grammar

Modals: present and future

Exercise 1 page 31
1 You needn't buy a guidebook.
2 We don't need to book a table.
3 She ought to apologise for her behaviour.
4 Are we supposed to take a gift?
5 You don't have to leave a tip.
6 You have to eat with your right hand.

Exercise 2 page 31
1 c 2 e 3 a 4 f 5 b 6 d

Exercise 3 page 31
1 b 2 d 3 b 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 c

Exercise 4 page 31
1 can be 2 ✓ 3 must 4 can't 5 can't 6 needn't / don't need to / don't have to 7 ✓

Exercise 5 page 31
1 can (sometimes) be 2 may / might / could be your 3 we can't be 4 You must recognise 5 will be able to 6 may / might / could be

Exercise 6 page 31
1 supposed 2 might 3 should 4 should 5 mustn't 6 able 7 needn't

3C Listening

When in Rome ...

Exercise 1 page 32
1 Hi there. 2 Good to meet you. 3 Come and meet some of my colleagues 4 Do you fancy a coffee? 5 (Sure) Why not? 6 Great to meet you / It was great meeting you.

Exercise 2 1.14 page 32
1 I Hi, guys!; How's things? 2 F Would you be so kind as to ... ; sir 3 I It's great to; I've heard loads ... 4 F Mrs Brown; may I ... 5 I Fancy ... 6 F Good afternoon. How may I be of assistance? 7 F terribly sorry; allow me to fetch ... 8 I Gotta; guys 9 F I wonder; appear to be 10 I No worries; See you later

Transcript
1 Hi, guys! How's things?
2 Would you be so kind as to sign here, sir?
3 It's great to meet you. I've heard loads about you from Anna.
4 Mrs Brown, may I introduce you to my father?
5 Fancy getting a pizza on the way home?
6 Good afternoon. How may I be of assistance?
7 I'm terribly sorry. I don't know how that happened. Allow me to fetch you another.
8 Gotta go now, guys. See you later.
9 I wonder if you could help me? I appear to be lost.
10 No worries. Another time maybe. See you later!

Exercise 3 1.15 page 32
a 4 b 3 c 1 d 2 e 6 f 5

Transcript
1 **A** Hey, forgot to tell you ... Joe and Anna are moving – to Paris!
B Really? Isn't that a bit sudden? How did that happen?
A His company offered him a job out there. They're going for at least a couple of years.
2 The girl said to the boy, 'You would be a good dancer, except for two things. And the boy asked, 'What two things?' And the girl answered, 'Your feet.'
3 And then the wicked witch cast a spell over the princess which put her to sleep for a hundred years. She lay in a glass casket with roses growing round her and people named her Sleeping Beauty.
4 **A** I'd like you to tell me a little about your current job, Ms Harker.
B Certainly. For the past two years I've been employed as a designer for a clothing company in London called ...
5 The one good thing about this film's where it is set. The backstreets of Rome provide a dark, atmospheric backdrop to the action. It's unfortunate that the action itself is rather far-fetched at times.
6 A You rang, milord?
B I did, Milton. Has there been any message from Lady Honoria today?
A I'm afraid not, milord.
B Are you sure, Milton?
A Quite sure, milord. Were you expecting something?
B It's of no importance, Milton. You may go back to your duties.
A Very good, milord.

Exercise 4 1.16 page 32
1 D 2 C 3 B 4 F

Transcript
1
A Good morning, Ms White. Please take a seat.
B Thank you.
A I've studied your application form in detail. Perhaps you would like to tell me in your own words why you would like to study at this college.
2
A How do you think they're going to get on in San Francisco?
B Great, probably. Why? Do you not think so, Stella?
A Well, what's Maria going to do out there?
3
A British comedian has announced his intention to perform on tour around the world – and not just in English. This popular show will be performed in 28 countries.
4
A Erm ... excuse me?
B Can I help you?
A Can you tell me where the bus stop is for the London Eye?

Exercise 5 1.17 page 32

1 b 2 c 3 c 4 b

Transcript

1 **A** Good morning, Ms White. Please take a seat.
B Thank you.
A I've studied your application form in detail. Perhaps you would like to tell me in your own words why you would like to study at this college.
B It appears to me that the courses offered are the ones most suitable for my interests. I'm keen to pursue a career in the sciences, but I would also like to continue my language studies. The biology with French course seems to offer me just that. What's more, it's the only course that offers biology in French. Other courses keep these areas separate. But to be able to study the sciences through the medium of another language would be a wonderful opportunity.
A And how do you think you might get on with that?
B Well, I should imagine it won't be easy, especially at first. There'll be a lot of new vocabulary to acquire at the beginning, I'm sure. And to learn new things in a language that isn't your mother tongue will always provide challenges. However, I'm confident that I can rise to the challenge and I'll do extra work, if necessary, to achieve the level I need.
A Indeed. What do you currently do to practise French outside of your school studies?
B I have conversation classes with Veronique, a French teacher who lives in my town. And I have a penfriend, Helène, who I correspond with, and who I'm visiting again this summer. We've been friends for a few years now and I know her family really well. They always speak French to me, even though their English is really good.
A I see. Thank you. Moving on to your expected grades …

2 **A** How do you think they're going to get on in San Francisco?
B Great, probably. Why? Do you not think so, Stella?
A Well, what's Maria going to do out there?
B I don't know. She'll have to give up her current job, I suppose.
A She won't like that! She loves her work. And her friends. You know how shy she is. Don't you think she'll struggle a bit in the States?
B Well, anywhere new is difficult at first. But I'm sure America will be easier than most places. It's not like we don't see it on the TV every day.
A Watching American dramas is not quite the same as actually living there!
B Well, obviously, Stella! But what I'm saying is that it's not like it's a completely alien culture.
A Well, I think it'll be more difficult for them than you think. Especially if only one of them has got a job in the beginning. Joe will have to be pretty understanding, or Maria will want to get the next flight home.
B Gosh, you're being a bit negative about a wonderful opportunity, aren't you?
A No, just realistic. I'm going to phone Maria and see how she really feels about it.
B Well, please sound a bit enthusiastic!
A OK, OK.

3 A British comedian has announced his intention to perform on tour around the world, and not just in English. This popular show will be performed in 28 countries. The comedian intends to perform in several different languages during the tour. He is by no means fluent in all of these languages, although he has already performed shows in French and German. He said, 'It's a very positive thing to do.' He thought that London was a great place for comedy, but he also wanted to communicate in other countries. He felt that people who speak English are just lazy when it comes to learning foreign languages. Although there were lots of reasons for other people to learn English, he suggested that for English speakers to learn a foreign language, they had to make it into an adventure and a mission. He felt it was important to translate his show because comedians from other countries already perform in English. He said that laughter is the best way to tell if you are getting the translation right. He continued, 'If you are getting laughs in the wrong place or no laughs at all, then that's the time you call a friend.'

4 **A** Erm … excuse me?
B Can I help you?
A Can you tell me where the bus stop is for the London Eye?
B You can get the guided tour bus that stops there, but it's actually easier to walk from here than it is to get the bus. If you go this way, you can walk across the Golden Jubilee Bridge and it's a short walk from there.
A Ah, OK. Thanks. Yes – that's the South Bank, isn't it?
B That's right. There's lots to do there. There's the London Aquarium, or the IMAX cinema …
A And I think the London Dungeon is on the South Bank?
B Yes, that's right it's next to the aquarium.
A And how much is it to do those things?
B It's £23.50 for the aquarium – though it's cheaper if you buy online the day before. So if you're free tomorrow, you can save some money.
A Thank you. What about the London Dungeon?
B That's £22.95
A Hmm … It's quite expensive.
B There's lots to see and do on the South Bank that's free, though. There are markets and street performances, and there's always a really nice atmosphere.
A OK, I think I'll go over there now and have a look. Thanks for your help.

3D Grammar

Past modals

Exercise 1 page 33

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 c

Exercise 2 page 33

1 might have told me 2 is / was supposed to be here 3 oughtn't / ought not to have gone 4 could have been / could be worried about 5 can't have gone to the 6 must have been (very) cold

Exercise 3 page 33

1 could have 2 should have 3 may have 4 must have 5 could have 6 can't have

Exercise 4 page 33

1 didn't need to get 2 didn't need to take / needn't have taken 3 didn't need to catch 4 didn't need to buy / needn't have bought 5 needn't have worried 6 needn't have walked / didn't need to walk

Exercise 5 page 33

1 needn't 2 was supposed to 3 ought not to
4 could 5 didn't need to

Exercise 6 page 33

1 Lunch was provided so they didn't need to take sandwiches.
2 She studied hard so she should have passed the exam.
3 I think he's foreign so he might not have understood you.
4 John can't be in Rome – I saw him earlier.
5 You ought to have listened to my advice.
6 You might have introduced me to your friends!

3E Word Skills

American English

Exercise 1 page 34

1 cell phone 2 sneakers 3 flashlight 4 highway
5 cookie 6 check 7 sidewalk 8 elevator

Exercise 2 page 34

1 Fall 2 vacation 3 apartment 4 closet(s) 5 yard
6 transportation 7 subway

Exercise 3 page 34

1 license 2 neighborhood 3 airplane 4 theater
5 colors 6 organization

Exercise 4 1.18 page 34

1 A 2 B 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 A 7 A

Transcript

See Workbook page 34.

Exercise 5 page 34

1 British 2 American 3 behavior 4 cancellation
5 centimeter 6 litre 7 memorize 8 marvellous
9 savoury

Exercise 6 page 34

1 It's an offence to smoke on the underground.
2 I bought this great/fantastic/marvellous, etc. handbag for my friend's birthday.
3 It seems tonight's film has been cancelled.
4 Can you get me a litre of water from the tap, please?
5 There's a strange odour from the car – I hope the petrol isn't leaking.
6 Sorry, I hadn't realised you were waiting in the queue.

3F Reading

The Kite Runner

Exercise 1 page 35

1 e 2 c 3 d 4 b 5 a

Exercise 2 page 35

b d e

Exercise 3 page 35

1 E 2 A 3 D 4 B C is not used.

3G Speaking

Topic-based presentation

Exercise 1 1.19 page 36

D

Transcript

Well, International Women's Day is on 8 March every year. As far as the history of the event is concerned, I'm not really an expert. I think it all began about a hundred years ago, around the time that women were trying to win the right to vote. In my country, it was originally a kind of political occasion.
Turning now to the topic of gifts, the most common one is flowers. It is traditional for men to give flowers to the important women in their lives – this includes mothers, daughters, wives, and so on. And children often take gifts to school for their female teachers. I know that in some countries, there is the custom of giving a particular type of flower as a gift – and a particular colour. This is not the case in my country.
That brings me to the subject of marches on International Women's Day. In my country, there's sometimes a march on International Women's Day but it isn't really a custom. I know that in some other countries, there is always a march. The purpose of the marches is to demand equal rights for women.
There's something else I'd like to talk about: national holidays. International Women's Day used to be a day off work for everyone. I think this is still true in some countries, but not in my country. I think it's a really important day, and should become a national holiday again in my country. That's my opinion anyway!

Exercise 2 page 36

1 far 2 now 3 subject 4 something

Exercise 3 1.19 page 36

a 3 c 4 d 2 e 1

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 page 36

1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

3H Writing

A blog post

Exercise 1 page 37

1 C 2 B 3 A 4 D

Exercise 2 page 37

advantages – paragraph B, personal account – paragraph C

Exercise 3 page 37

1 run 2 Travelling 3 arrived 4 finishing 5 Waiting
6 made 7 swimming

Exercise 4 page 37

Travelling to town, I chatted to the other passengers.

Review Unit 3

Exercise 1 page 38
1 gave, thumbs 2 folded, arms 3 raised, eyebrows
4 crossed, fingers 5 pursed, lips 6 bowed, head
7 covered, mouth 8 shrugged, shoulders

Exercise 2 page 38
1 e 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 f

Exercise 3 page 38
1 bill 2 mobile phone 3 crisps 4 biscuit
5 underground 6 torch 7 motorway 8 petrol

Exercise 4 page 38
1 deep-throated 2 low-set 3 thin-boned 4 longhaired

Exercise 5 page 38
1 what it's called 2 It's a kind of 3 It's something you
4 In other words

Exercise 6 page 38
1 You must 2 You don't have 3 you're supposed
4 You mustn't 5 You needn't 6 you should

Exercise 7 page 39
1 must 2 can't 3 might 4 can 5 should 6 be able to

Exercise 8 page 39
1 might have gone 2 can't have seen 3 must have told
4 should have got 5 shouldn't have stayed
6 must have been delayed 7 might not have received
8 shouldn't have spent

Exercise 9 page 39
1 should / ought to apologise 2 must be 3 don't have to dress up / don't need to dress up / needn't dress up 4 mustn't use 5 be able to help you 6 may / might not have seen 7 shouldn't have worn 8 can't / couldn't have made 9 could / might / should have told
10 needn't have brought

Unit 4 Holidays and tourism

4A Vocabulary

Getting away from it all

Exercise 1 page 40
Holiday accommodation beach house, caravan, guest house, holiday home, self-catering apartment, tent, time-share apartment
Types of holidays adventure holiday, backpacking, beach holiday, cruise, surfing, volunteering, winter sports holiday

Exercise 2 page 40
1 hotel 2 house swap 3 villa 4 youth hostel
5 B&B 6 self-catering apartment

Exercise 3 1.20 page 40
house swap, package holiday, volunteering holiday, cycling holiday. They decide to go on a cycling holiday.

Transcript
Jessica So where are we going to go? We haven't got much money, so we can't go far.
Alex Why don't we do a house swap? Then we wouldn't have to pay for accommodation and we could afford to go somewhere like New York.
Jessica We live in a small, boring, town. Nobody from New York will want to come here!
Alex Okay. Let's go on a package holiday. As long as we don't go in August, we're sure to find some good offers!
Jessica A package holiday? There 'll be lots of families with screaming kids! And the local towns will be full of awful tourist attractions and souvenir shops. No thank you! I'd prefer to do something active. You know, we could go on a volunteering holiday.
Alex Volunteering? You mean sleeping in old buildings that are falling down and spending a week repairing some old castle that is halfway up a mountain that nobody can get to?
Jessica Why not?
Alex Why not? Because working is not my idea of a holiday, that's why not!
Jessica Oh dear, this is going to be difficult … Just a minute! There is something that we both like and that would be quite reasonable: cycling!
Alex A cycling holiday? Yes, that sounds a good idea! We could get the ferry over to Ireland and visit the beaches on the west coast.
Jessica Good idea. There's very little tourism there and it's so beautiful.
Alex Right, let's check out tickets for the …

Exercise 4 1.20 page 40
1 dull 2 crowded, commercialised 3 run-down, inaccessible 4 unspoilt

Transcript
See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 page 40
1 breathtaking 2 dingy 3 remote 4 hospitable
5 vibrant 6 unique

Exercise 6 page 40
1 easy 2 pamper 3 physically 4 adventure
5 batteries 6 experiences

Exercise 7 page 40
1 d 2 g 3 b 4 a 5 e 6 h 7 f 8 c

4B Grammar

Future continuous, future perfect and future perfect continuous

Exercise 1 page 41
1 have saved 2 have finished 3 be studying
4 be playing 5 be doing 6 have finished

Exercise 2 page 41
1 ✓ 2 By the end of May I'll have been living here for 10 years. 3 It's hoped that scientists will discover a cure for cancer soon. 4 How long will you have been studying English for by the end of this year? 5 ✓ 6 I will have been growing my hair for two years soon.

Exercise 3 page 41

1 will have been running 2 will be reading 3 will have posted 4 will have given 5 will have been receiving 6 will be approaching / will have approached

Exercise 4 page 41

1 What time will you be going home?
2 Who will he be inviting to the party?
3 When will she be coming out of hospital?
4 Why will our teacher be leaving next year?
5 Will you be seeing Marco tomorrow?
6 Who will you be supporting in the match?

Exercise 5 page 41

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 c

Exercise 6 page 41

1 have spoken 2 'm meeting / 'll be meeting
3 'll have been travelling 4 are visiting / 'll be visiting
5 'll have been revising

4C Listening

Trip of a lifetime

Exercise 1 page 42

2 b 3 a 4 c 5 d 6 h 7 g 8 f 9 j 10 i

Exercise 2 page 42

1 go off the beaten track 2 get away from it all 3 have a lovely view 4 light a campfire 5 taste a local dish

Exercise 3 1.21 page 42

a 1 cafe, office 2 shop 3 at home 4 hotel / holiday apartment
b 1 boyfriend – girlfriend / wife – husband, 2 friends / sisters 3 mother and son 4 brothers
c 1 evening 2 lunch time / late morning, 3 early evening / dinner time 4 early afternoon
d They are going to eat before going to the cinema. 2 They are going for an early lunch. 3 The rucksack is in the attic / the boy can go camping. 4 The boys will have another ice cream before leaving for the airport.

Transcript

1 **Woman** John, where are you? I've been waiting here at Dino's for half an hour. I've already had two coffees!
Man Darling, did you not get my text message earlier? I'm so sorry. I'm just out of the meeting – it went on and on – and then I was asked to write up the meeting notes! I'm just finishing up now.
W Well, we've missed the 6.30 film. The next showing is two hours after that, I think. Can you get here soon so that we can get a bite to eat first?
M Of course. I'm on my way now.

2 **A** Oh, that's lovely. Turn around? … Oh, yes. You should definitely get that for your holiday.
B You think so? OK, but I've got to stop buying stuff now. I'm supposed to be travelling light for this trip!
A That will be the first time, then! Anyway, I've had enough now too. Fancy a coffee, or a bit of lunch, even? It's a bit early, I know, but I'm really hungry.
Girl 2 Me too. Why not? Come on.

3 **Boy** Mum, have you seen my rucksack?
Mum I think it's in the attic. What do you want it for?
B Well, Andy and his family have invited me to go camping next weekend. It's OK if I go, isn't it?
M Of course, but please get all your homework done during the week!
B Will do, Mum! Hey, what's for dinner? I'm starving.
M Chicken. But have a snack now if you want. It won't be ready for another hour at least.

4 **A** I wish we could stay another week.
B I know. It's brilliant here, isn't it? I love the pool, and the beach, and the food.
A And the ice cream is fantastic!
B Yeah, I wish we could have one more before we go.
A Dad says we've got to pack our suitcases. Maybe if we hurry up, we can get one before the bus arrives.
B When's that, then?
A I don't know. 4.00? The flight's at 7.30, I think. Come on. Let's pack.

Exercise 4 page 42

1 I just have a short time. 2 Could you just close the door? 3 I got to the train just in time. 4 It's just amazing! 5 He has just left. 6 We just have to buy milk now. 7 This film's just so funny! 8 Could you just repeat your name?

Exercise 5 page 42

a 4, 7 b 1, 6 c 2, 8 d 3, 5

Exercise 6 1.22 page 42

1 F 2 F 3 T 4 T 5 T

Transcript

Ella John? Are you ready? Come on, let's get down early for breakfast for once or all the best food will be gone. What do you feel like doing today? I'm not sure I want to spend another day lying around.
John You don't? Well, I don't really know, in that case. Any ideas? I really don't mind, Ella, to be honest.
Ella OK. Well, do you fancy going on a tour?
John What kind of tour?
Ella There are a couple on offer today. There's a tour of the island, but it's a water tour! You go on a small boat to different beaches on the island and you can picnic, swim and go snorkelling.
John Sounds great. What's the other one?
Ella We could visit an ancient historical site on the coast. It's called the Knossus. It's really well preserved and it's important in the island's history and the country's history as a whole.
John Sounds interesting! Well, as I say, I don't mind. Which would you rather do?
Ella To be honest, we've been doing a lot of swimming and that sort of thing since we got here, which is wonderful, I agree. But I fancy learning about some of the island's history. Let's face it, Greece has a lot of it!
John It also has a lot of sea! But why not? It'll make a nice change. Too much relaxing is a bad thing!
Ella The site is overlooking the sea. It'll still be relaxing – just in a different way.
John Sure, bus journeys are always relaxing! How long is the trip?
Ella It takes all day.
John Really? I thought you were going to say a couple of hours. Are you sure? How far away is this place?
Ella It's on the other side of the island. Don't tell me you're changing your mind now!
John Let's hope the bus is air-conditioned, that's all I'm saying.

Ella Of course it will be. Anyway, we'll ask when we book it. There are still places. I've checked. And we'll have to hurry up with breakfast. The coach leaves from the car park in an hour.
John OK. If you're really sure you want to go.
Ella Oh, come on. We've done nothing all week!
John I thought that was the whole point of holidays – doing nothing. Relaxing.
Ella I think the point of them is to go somewhere different and to see lots of different things! Oh, go on, please come. There's no point in going alone.
John I didn't say I wasn't coming! You go and book the tickets and I'll have an ice cream to fortify myself for the long journey ahead!
Ella Great.

4D Grammar

Future time clauses

Exercise 1 page 43
1 b 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 c

Exercise 2 page 43
1 see 2 'll have been 3 've arrived / arrive 4 decide
5 'm visiting / 'll be visiting 6 gets 7 'll be talking

Exercise 3 page 43
1 they will have 2 I'm getting 3 wait 4 won't have finished 5 will go 6 lend

Exercise 4 page 43
1 as soon as 2 by the time 3 on condition that
4 By the time / When 5 If 6 in case

Exercise 5 page 43
1 take suncream, I won't 2 case it rains later
3 I've finished packing / I finish packing, I'll
4 the time you hear from 5 he doesn't find his passport
6 (that) you don't snore

4E Word Skills

Adverbs and adverbial phrases

Exercise 1 page 44
1 yearly 2 early 3 monthly 4 friendly 5 motherly
6 weekly

Exercise 2 page 44
1 I renew my gym membership monthly.
2 She smiled in a really lovely way.
3 My brother's band plays in town fortnightly / plays fortnightly in town.
4 The man spoke in a cowardly way.
5 She was driving too fast when she crashed.
6 Can he afford to go diving annually?

Exercise 3 page 44
1 a 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 a

Exercise 4 page 44
1 a hardly b hard 2 a free b freely 3 a closely b close
4 a flatly b flat 5 a nearly b near 6 a late b lately

Exercise 5 page 44
1 lively 2 nearly 3 rough 4 closely 5 widely
6 hardly 7 lately

Exercise 6 page 44
1 b 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 a

4F Reading

Globetrotters

Exercise 1 page 45
1 set 2 pulled 3 went 4 getting 5 came 6 stop
7 take 8 get

Exercise 2 page 45
1 T 2 F 3 F 4 F 5 T 6 F

Exercise 3 page 45
1 C 2 B 3 C 4 B 5 A / B 6 C

4G Speaking

Interview and stimulus-based discussion

Exercise 3 1.23 page 46
comfort cost safety interest speed
length of trip sea sickness

Transcript
I think I'll choose the trip on the gondola – mainly because I've never been on one before. I'm actually not very keen on boats, but the trip is short and I think the gondola looks slow and therefore safe! I think it would be a wonderful thing to see the city from the water. Judging by the photo, the gondola looks quite comfortable as well. The gondola tour is also cheaper, though this wouldn't be my primary reason for choosing it.
I wouldn't pick the boat trip for the simple reason that I don't enjoy travelling by speedboat! I sometimes get seasick on a boat, which is a shame because I'm sure the tour would be wonderful. Obviously it would be an interesting way of sightseeing for other people. The other reason why I'm not choosing the boat trip is that I'm not a strong swimmer and so I sometimes don't feel safe on a boat in open water. The boat in the picture looks quite small as well, so it might make me a bit nervous. So, all in all, the gondola is the most relaxing option for me!

Exercise 4 1.23 page 46
1, 4 and 6

Transcript
See exercise 3.

4H Writing

A letter of complaint

Exercise 1 page 47
1 I received the booking information from you.
2 Your company offered no apology.
3 I feel strongly that you are at fault.
4 I believe your online system should be reviewed.
5 I don't want other people to be inconvenienced as I was.
6 Further problems will arise.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercise 2 page 47

1 That the online booking system be reviewed. 2 That there should be more information and help for passengers when problems occur. 3 That there be bottled water available in extremely hot conditions.

Exercise 3 page 47

1 I suggest that your online booking system be reviewed.
2 I request that there be bottled water available in extremely hot conditions.

Exercise 4 page 47

1 I suggest that you review the booking procedure.
2 I recommend that you announce delays.
3 I propose (that) you delay your decision.
4 I demand that my ticket be refunded.

Review Unit 4

Exercise 1 page 48

1 camper van 2 package holiday 3 campsite 4 city break 5 guest house 6 self-catering apartment 7 Backpacking 8 youth hostel

Exercise 2 page 48

1 vibrant 2 run-down 3 remote 4 unspoilt 5 overcrowded 6 dingy

Exercise 3 page 48

1 light 2 put up 3 travel 4 get away 5 go off 6 sleep

Exercise 4 page 48

1 roughly 2 early 3 hard 4 closely 5 lately 6 pretty

Exercise 5 page 48

1 set off 2 get around 3 get back 4 stop over 5 go off 6 pull up

Exercise 6 page 48

1 The best option 2 I wouldn't pick 3 I'm opting 4 The reason why 5 I wouldn't 6 I think

Exercise 7 page 49

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 b

Exercise 8 page 49

1 's raining / rains 2 goes 3 've checked / check 4 are 5 've had / have 6 're listening

Exercise 9 page 49

1 be 2 case 3 has 4 will 5 condition 6 have / need 7 by 8 view 9 for 10 back

Exam Skills Trainer 2

Exercise 1 page 50

1 D 2 A 3 B 4 C 5 C

Exercise 2 page 50

1 call for assistance 2 didn't feel comfortable with 3 cut their holiday short 4 omitted to pack 5 wasn't able to use

Exercise 3 1.24 page 51

1 B 2 A 3 E 4 C

Transcript

1 I'm not that fond of camping, to be honest, so when my parents told me we were going on a camping holiday with my aunt and uncle and my cousins, I wasn't very pleased. I felt better when I was told that they'd booked cabins instead of tents and I actually quite enjoyed the first day. That is, until I was washing the dishes after dinner. As I bent over the sink, I suddenly realised there were hundreds of ants marching along the bottom of the cupboard where my head was – yuck! After that, we gave up using the kitchen and resorted to eating in the café on the campsite instead.

2 I used to do a lot of camping with the youth group I belonged to, and I remember one particular holiday when, for some reason or other, I wasn't getting on with the girls in my tent. Anyway, one night we'd all gone to bed and suddenly I felt something moving in my sleeping bag. I put my hand down inside and pulled out this enormous frog. Fortunately, that kind of thing doesn't scare me, so I just got up and put it outside of the tent. I thought that one of the girls had probably put it there, but when I asked them in the morning, they denied it.

3 I always go camping with my family to the Gower Peninsula in Wales in the summer – it's a beautiful area, but the campsite we stay at is basic, to say the least. We take our own food and do all our own cooking, and at night we usually play cards together – it's all pretty chilled. The only problem is that you can't rely on the weather in Wales, and it often rains. In fact, one year, it was so windy that our tent blew away while we were inside it trying to sleep. So that was the end of that. All we could do was throw everything into the car and drive home.

4 I've only been camping once, and I'm not planning on doing it again. We were in Madrid at the time, and it was so hot that we needed to get away. So we got hold of a tent and drove to a campsite in the mountains that a friend had recommended. We didn't bother taking sleeping bags, because we didn't think we would need them. How wrong we were! That night we froze! While the temperature during the day was around 30°, it went below 10° at night and we ended up sleeping in the car with the heating on. The next day, we booked ourselves into the nearest hotel for a few days.

Exercise 4 page 51

B – A is incorrect because it doesn't express exactly the same meaning. C is incorrect because it doesn't contain the word *ever* and doesn't express the same meaning. D is incorrect because it is incorrect grammatically.

Exercise 5 page 51

1 far more expensive than 2 shouldn't have left home 3 I'll have made 4 unless they give us 5 I'd rather not go 6 must have been sad

Exercise 7 page 51

1 express strong dissatisfaction 2 regret to inform you, misleading 3 In the circumstances, refund in full 4 action you intend to take

Unit 5 Relationships

5A Vocabulary

Relating to people

Exercise 1 page 52

1 wavelength 2 sorry 3 common 4 eye 5 close 6 wary

Exercise 2 page 52

1 respect 2 looks up to 3 envy 4 trust 5 look down on 6 adore

Exercise 3 1.25 page 52

1 c 2 a 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 b

Transcript

1 **Girl** So what's Eva like?
Boy She's really good fun and I enjoy going out with her, but we don't seem to like doing the same kind of things. I suppose that's OK, though. We do always have a good time together.
Girl Well, they say that opposites attract, don't they?

2 **Girl** Look, you can't expect me to spend time with your family. I mean, they're so … so …
Boy What? What's so special about you and your family? You think you're better than everyone else, don't you?
Girl Well, we're from different social backgrounds, aren't we? I mean …

3 **Boy 1** Look out! It's that guy from the other day. You know, that one that was shouting at people in the shopping centre.
Boy 2 Oh yes! I remember him. We'd better keep away from him in case he starts getting aggressive again.

4 **Boy** Your brother's done really well. You must be really proud of him!
Girl I certainly am! He's really worked hard for everything that he's achieved. I hope I can do as well as him one day!

5 **Boy** I told Amy about my secret and now I wish I hadn't.
Girl Don't worry, if there's one person you can count on, it's Amy. She won't say anything to anybody.
Boy Are you sure?
Girl Definitely!

6 **Girl** What do you mean, Jack isn't going on the march? Everybody else is. We've got to save the park!
Boy That isn't his opinion. He actually thinks a new road would help reduce traffic problems in town!
Girl What? Are you joking?
Boy I wish I were! I really don't understand Jack at times!

Exercise 4 page 52

1 on 2 about 3 about 4 for 5 about 6 for

Exercise 5 page 52

1 praise 2 flatter 3 insult 4 warn 5 nag

Exercise 6 page 52

1 told 2 praised 3 nagging 4 teased 5 complimented 6 warned

5B Grammar

Negative structures

Exercise 1 page 53

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c

Exercise 2 page 53

1 had she felt so unhappy 2 will you find a better friend 3 once have we ever argued 4 way did I mean to upset anyone 5 no time should you tell lies 6 no circumstances can you trust him 7 until Friday will we get our results

Exercise 3 page 53

1 g 2 f 3 c 4 a 5 e 6 b 7 d

Exercise 4 page 53

1 Didn't 2 not 3 had 4 than 5 only 6 Wouldn't 7 apologising 8 no

Exercise 5 page 53

1 no circumstances must we 2 no way is this band 3 had I got there than 4 time have my friends 5 not keeping his news 6 not to get lost 7 Didn't Jerry go into 8 until I've spoken to

5C Listening

Sibling rivalry

Exercise 1 1.26 page 54

(Possible answers)

1 She behaved like an angel. 2 He was energetic and noisy. 3 'Why can't you be more like your sister?' 4 He sometimes hated her. 5 When he got better at school and people stopped comparing them.

Transcript

Ella, my sister, was born with big blue eyes and golden curls. She looked like an angel, and she behaved like one too. This was not good news for me. I was an energetic, noisy child. I wasn't particularly naughty – I was just a typical boy. But anyone would seem naughty compared to my sister! All I heard was 'Why can't you be more like your sister?' and I hated it – and I hated her sometimes. It wasn't her fault, of course. She was lovely and she adored me, but sometimes I pushed her away. Later, when I got better at school, things improved and we became good friends. People stopped comparing us then. She's still lovely and she still adores me, but now I think she's great too!

Exercise 2 page 54

1 c 2 a 3 b

Exercise 3 1.27 page 54

1 My sister was born with big, blue (w)eyes. 1
2 She looked like (k)an (n)angel. 2
3 This was no(t) good news for me. 3
4 Sometimes I pushed her (r)away. 3
5 Later, when I go(t) better. 4
6 Now I thin(k) she's grea(t) too. 3

Transcript

1 My sister was born with big, blue (w)eyes.
2 She looked like (k)an (n)angel.
3 This was no(t) good news for me.

4 Sometimes I pushed her (r)away.
5 Later, when I go(t) better at school …
6 Now I thin(k) she's grea(t) too.

Exercise 4 1.27 page 54

Transcript
See exercise 3.

Exercise 5 1.28 page 54

1 b 2 b 3 c

Transcript

1 **Jake** I don't think you should hang out with Luke so much, Sam. He's not a nice guy and I don't think he's a good friend to have.
Sam Luke's fun! Why are you always commenting on my friends? You don't like any of them!
Jake That's not true! I like Jonathan and Charlie.
Sam That's because they're your friends too! Why can't I have some of my own friends?
Jake You can and you do! Plenty of them. But I just think Luke's a bit of a bad influence on you. He'll get you into trouble very soon.
Sam You're always acting the older brother and it's so annoying.
Jake That's cos I *am* the older brother and I'm looking out for you!
Sam Well, thanks, but I don't need it. I'm old enough to make my own decisions now and I can choose my own friends.
Jake Fine, whatever. Look, I'm just warning you. Have some sense. Be careful and don't go along with all of Luke's stupid ideas.
Sam OK, OK. I know what you mean. He does do some stupid things, but I don't think he's bad, just silly. He makes me laugh.
Jake OK, fine, maybe he's OK. But you look after him, then. Sounds like he needs it!

2 I'm one of six and I had the bad luck to be born in the middle. I've got two much older brothers who were born only a year apart and have always been best friends. And I have two younger brothers and a sister, and they're triplets! You can imagine what my mum thought when the doctor told her the news! I was two and a half when the triplets were born and I think it was a real problem for me. I was still just a baby myself. My poor mum and dad tried to spend time with me, but they were exhausted looking after the triplets. And my brothers were usually somewhere else doing something I couldn't do. It's not that they didn't like me, they were just doing their own thing. So I was really happy when my grandma came to live with us. She became my second mum and did everything with me that my mum wasn't able to do. Grandma was the one who taught me how to ride a bike, tie my shoelaces, and took me to school on the first day – that sort of thing. We're so close now, I don't know what I'd do without her.

3 **Interviewer** What was it like with you girls as teenagers? Did you get along?
Linda Well, not all the time, isn't that right, Cathy?
Cathy That's right, Linda. We've always been close and we got on well as children, but we had problems when it came to sharing a room!
Linda Yes! When our parents divorced, we went to live in a smaller house with our mum and we had to share a bedroom again.
Cathy I was seventeen and Linda was fifteen and we had a lot of stuff for one small room.
Linda *You* had a lot of stuff, Cathy! And you never put it away!
Cathy It's true that I wasn't particularly tidy then.
Linda You were extremely messy!!!
Cathy True. And I didn't realise how messy I was and how much it bothered my little sister, until one day I was sunbathing in the back garden and all my clothes came floating out of the upstairs window.
Linda Yes, I'm afraid I threw all my sister's things that were on the floor out of the window. The garden was covered with them!
Cathy I ran upstairs and we had an argument, but I did try to be tidier after that.
Linda You did. And the funny thing is, that when we studied at university, we chose to share a flat together! And you're quite tidy now, aren't you?
Cathy Yep, fortunately I've improved since then!

Exercises 6 and 7 1.29 page 54

1 You're always acting the yolder brother and i(t)'s so annoying.
2 That's cos I yam the yolder brother ran I'm looking ou(t) for you.
3 You can nimagine wha(t) my mum though(t) when the doctor told her the news!
4 I was two wand da half when the triplets were born an I think i(t) was a real problem for me.
5 One day yl was sunbathing gin the ba(ck) garden nand dall my clothes came floating gout tof the yupstairs window.
6 I ran nupstairs and we had dan nargument, but tI did try to be tidier rafter that.

Transcript
See answer key.

5D Grammar

Articles and quantifiers

Exercise 1 page 55

1 an emotional short film 2 the best friend 3 a dog
4 the United States 5 a camper van 6 a serious illness
7 The film 8 Colorado

Exercise 2 page 55

1 The, the 2 a, the 3 –, the 4 the, the 5 a, the
6 The, – 7 a, the 8 an, a

Exercise 3 page 55

1 b 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 b

Exercise 4 page 55

1 c 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 b

Exercise 5 page 55

1 few 2 one 3 a 4 none 5 both 6 no

Exercise 6 page 55

1 a 2 The 3 a 4 few 5 Both 6 many 7 The 8 of

5E Word Skills

Phrasal verbs

Exercise 1 page 56
1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 b 6 c 7 a

Exercise 2 page 56
1 didn't turn up 2 haven't made up 3 getting over
4 put / through 5 talking / into 6 don't get on

Exercise 3 page 56
1 up 2 out 3 about 4 up 5 up 6 up

Exercise 4 page 56
Separable bring up, call off, let down, turn down
Inseparable get over, look after, run into, take after

5F Reading

Love is in the air

Exercise 1 page 57
1 guinea pigs 2 paper 3 proof 4 mate 5 genes
6 immune systems 7 offspring 8 organs

Exercise 2 page 57
factor – noun: a fact or situation that influences the result of something; fancy – verb; to be attracted to someone; leap – noun: to make a sudden movement from one place to another; intimacy – noun; a close relationship with someone; swap – verb; exchange

Exercise 3 page 57
1 D 2 C 3 A 4 B

Exercise 4 page 57
1 d 2 c 3 d 4 a

5G Speaking

Photo description and comparison

Exercise 1 page 58
1 They must have been good friends before the argument as they were always together.
2 There may have been a misunderstanding.
3 She can't have said that about her friend.
4 She must have liked her friend's brother.
5 He may not have been attracted to her.
6 They can't have gone out together.

Exercise 3 1.30 page 58
1 discussion 2 in trouble 3 worried about him
4 explain something 5 shouting at him 6 quite cross

Transcript
There is a family sitting on a sofa. The photo seems to show a family discussion. It looks as if the son is in trouble. He must have done something wrong. Judging by their expressions, I'd say that the parents are worried about him. I might be wrong, but I think the mother is asking him to explain something. I can't be certain, but I don't think she's shouting at him. However, the father looks quite cross, so maybe the boy has done something to offend him.

Exercise 5 page 58
(Possible answers)
1 The common theme of the photos is family arguments..
2 In both photos I can see a man pointing his finger and shouting.
3 In photo A the family is sitting down, whereas in photo B, the adults are standing up..
4 Students' own answers.
5 Students' own answers.

Transcript
Hmm, let me see what I can come up with … Nothing springs immediately to mind … Oh, yes, I suppose the last time was when my friend John borrowed my bike. He's always borrowing things and I don't usually mind, but he gave my bike back in really bad condition and I was pretty upset about it. I mean, it was filthy and there was a small tear in the seat cover. He must have realised that I wasn't happy, but he just started saying that the bike was already like that when he borrowed it! Then I was absolutely furious and lost my temper with him, so he stormed off. Later on, though, he come back to apologise, and I had calmed down by then. He took my bike away and cleaned it, and we're friends as before. He hasn't borrowed anything else from me lately, though!

5H Writing

An opinion essay

Exercise 1 page 59
Three elements: 1 Give your opinion of the view
2 Describe how we make friends these days
3 List situations where you can recognise real friends

Exercise 2 page 59
Element 1 A Element 2 B Element 3 C

Exercise 3 page 59
1 Not that we agree on everything, but we generally have a caring and supportive relationship. (para C), … although you may have lots of friends to have fun with, make sure you have at least one close friend … (Para D)
2 Nevertheless (Para B)
3 It is said … (Para B)
4 Not that it isn't good to have a wide circle of people to socialise with. (Para B)
5 I do think that a true friend is one who is always there for you … (Para A)

Exercise 4 page 59
1 Although she's a good friend, she can be a bit moody.
2 It is said that you must be a good friend to have a good friend.
3 It is important to have true friends.
4 I tried talking to him, not that he understood what I was saying.
5 I try hard. However, she won't be friends with me.

Exercise 5 page 59
1 I did like her. 2 'Why didn't you tell him I was here?' 'I did tell him!' 3 Although she's twice my age, we do have a lot in common. 4 I do think he is a good friend. 5 'You don't support me enough.' 'I do support you!'

Review Unit 5

Exercise 1 page 60
1 feel sorry for 2 'm wary of 3 see eye to eye a lot in common 5 're on the same wavelength 6 looks up to

Exercise 2 page 60
1 nagged 2 offended 3 complimented 4 teased 5 flattered 6 lectured

Exercise 3 page 60
1 We waited, but John didn't turn up.
2 I didn't want to bring it up.
3 You're always putting me down.
4 Kate was upset, but she'll get over it.
5 They offered me a job, but I turned it down.

Exercise 4 page 60
1 genes 2 paper 3 organs 4 offspring 5 proof

Exercise 5 page 60
1 b 2 d 3 c 4 e 5 a

Exercise 6 page 60
1 Never (in my life) have I been so embarrassed (in my life).
2 Under no circumstances should you leave the resort.
3 Not until next week will there be another delivery.
4 No sooner had I left my house than I ran into an old friend.
5 At no time did they consider splitting up.
6 Nowhere (before) had we seen such poverty (before).

Exercise 7 page 60
1 not to drop the plate 2 not to go to university
3 not hearing very much traffic 4 Didn't your sister take
5 Should / Shouldn't we go home

Exercise 8 page 61
1 b 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 c 6 b

Exercise 9 page 61
1 many 2 none 3 several 4 all 5 few 6 Neither

Exercise 10 page 61
1 haven't felt close to 2 (had) talked me into playing
3 told her off for coming 4 (has) put me off eating
5 did the play begin 6 had I reached the platform
7 Haven't we met 8 tries not to think about 9 none of my friends have seen 10 laughed at every one of

Unit 6 Health

6A Vocabulary

Food science

Exercise 1 page 62
1 consume 2 produce 3 burn 4 process
5 reduces 6 control 7 boost

Exercise 2 page 62
1 consume 2 reduce 3 produce 4 boost 5 digest
6 ache 7 control

Exercise 3 page 62
1 processed meat 2 processed food 3 Dairy products
4 whole grain 5 poultry

Exercise 4 2.02 page 62
1, 2, 5, 6, 7, 8, 10, 11

Transcript
A balanced training schedule also means eating properly, so here are the best fitness foods.
No doubt you refused to eat vegetables when you were a child, but now broccoli, which is full of nutrients, should be part of your diet. Eat it with a little oil and salt and you'll soon forget saying it tasted horrible!
Accompany broccoli with sweet potatoes and tomatoes. Both are full of vitamins, especially vitamin C.
I regret to say that red meat is out. Although it's a good source of protein, it contains too much fat. It's much better to eat fish, especially salmon. You must eat fruit – don't forget to eat plenty of bananas, the perfect energy food. Bananas contain fibre, which helps your body absorb the sugar they contain slowly so we produce energy for longer.
Nuts are packed with minerals and make a perfect snack, but be careful! They're high in calories and you could put on weight if you eat too many of them!
If you exercise in the evening, it can be difficult to sleep, so try drinking a glass of warm milk before you go to bed. Milk stimulates chemicals in the body that will make you feel sleepy and of course the calcium in milk is excellent for making our bones stronger.

Exercise 5 2.02 page 62
1 nutrients 2 vitamins 3 protein 4 fat 5 fibre
6 minerals 7 calories 8 calcium

Transcript
See exercise 4.

6B Grammar

The passive

Exercise 1 page 63
1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 c

Exercise 2 page 63
1 have been prescribed 2 hadn't been invented
3 will be developed 4 were infected
5 are being discovered 6 weren't used

Exercise 3 page 63
2 Both of us have been offered a place at university. / A place at university has been offered to both of us.
3 I was cooked a special dinner last night. / A special dinner was cooked for me last night.
4 The money is being lent to Anna. / Anna is being lent the money.
5 I've just been sent a text message. / A text message has just been sent to me.
6 Do you think he'll be given the job? / Do you think the job will be given to him?

Exercise 4 page 63

1 is known 2 are / were caused 3 was raised 4 had been bitten 5 is given 6 was / has been improved

Exercise 5 page 63

1 definitely wasn't broken by me / was definitely not broken by me. 2 Jan been invited 3 hadn't been told about 4 will be explained (to us) by 5 were being shown 6 are being advised (by the government) not to

6C Listening

Keeping fit

Exercise 1 page 64

1 converts, energy 2 adrenalin, burn 3 bursts, high-intensity 4 pumping

Exercise 2 page 64

1 am, beaten 2 go 3 keeping 4 push 5 lifts 6 attends, doing 7 pedals 8 playing

Exercise 3 2.03 page 64

1 I just can't stand sport or going to the gym.
2 I really don't understand why more people my age don't play it.
3 in short bursts of fast activity
4 We have a trampoline in our garden and we all love bouncing on it.
5 a type of sugar called glucose, which goes directly into our blood for energy.

Transcript

1 It's terrible, I know, but I just can't stand sport or going to the gym. I'll take the dog for a walk, but that's about it.
2 My favourite sport is table tennis. It's incredibly fast and skilful and I really don't understand why more people my age don't play it.
3 Our bodies prefer to exercise in the way our ancestors did – in short bursts of fast activity.
4 We have a trampoline in our garden and we all love bouncing on it, even my mum.
5 Our food is converted into a type of sugar called glucose, which goes directly into our blood for energy.

Exercise 4 2.04 page 64

1 c 2 b 3 c 4 a

Transcript

1 **A** We don't go to the gym or play sports much, do we, Lottie?
B No, not really. We have to do sports at school, and that's OK, but it's not really how I like to exercise.
A No, we prefer dancing! Specifically, ballroom dancing.
B Yes, we've been going to classes together for years, since we were ten …
A And we've both got partners. I've been dancing with Dave for four years. He's one year younger than me but he's really good.
B And my partner's Jonathon. He's brilliant. And we all get on really well.
A And we all practise together – almost every night when there's a competition.
B Yes, the four of us take part in ballroom dancing competitions together. We wear identical costumes and we all have to dance at exactly the same speed and time and movement. It's very difficult, but we've got quite good at it and have started getting medals …
A And earlier this year we won our regional junior championships!
B Yes, we were all thrilled about that. And so were our families. They're our biggest supporters.

2 I'm a huge rugby fan, both watching it and playing it. Our local rugby club is very good and we train hard on a Friday night to prepare for matches and tournaments, which are usually on Sundays. Our team regularly wins the under-18s competitions. I love rugby because, although it is aggressive, it's actually very disciplined. As the sport can be dangerous, you have to stick to the regulations, or you can get injured – sometimes quite badly. Our coaches are very strict with us and make sure no-one does a risky move that could endanger someone else. But it's still a fast and furious sport and I've always got bruises!

3 **A** Professor, can you explain some of the benefits of exercise for us and our bodies?
B Certainly. Firstly, exercise requires oxygen, so you breathe faster and your heart pumps more blood to your muscles, which become stronger. The heart is a muscle too, and it needs exercise to keep it strong.
A What else happens in the body?
B Well, with regular exercise, the lungs become stronger and more efficient over time, and your bones become stronger. These are really important changes for later in life. But it appears that one of the most important effects that exercise has is on our brains.
A And how is that?
B Exercise increases blood flow to the brain which immediately helps it function better and encourages your brain to work at optimum capacity.
A Really? I didn't know that.
B Yes, and during exercise our brains release chemicals which protect the brain and the body and improve our mood at the same time. Over time, this can have a really positive effect.
A So it's a win-win situation?
B Yes. Regular exercise is the key to a healthier – and happier – life.

4 My dad is a triathlete. He trains in his spare time – he's a teacher – but he's quite dedicated, especially if he's got a race coming up. I've begun to join him when I can. I now go with him on his morning swim sessions. We swim before work and school, about three times a week. I don't like the early mornings, but once I'm there, it feels great. I've always been a good swimmer so it's fun, really. Three times a week, when he comes home from work, we'll go out for a run. I'm faster than him, but he has more endurance for the longer runs. At the weekends we cycle. Dad bought me my first racing bike, and it's amazing. It took a bit of getting used to – especially as you have to attach your shoes to the pedals – but I love it. We're now preparing for a triathlon at the end of the summer, which is perfect timing as we have the summer holidays to do lots of training. I'm quite excited.

6D Grammar

The passive: advanced structures

Exercise 1 page 65

1 can't be woken 2 ought to have been done
3 must have been checked 4 can be disturbed

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

5 should be dismissed 6 might have been lied
7 may have been misunderstood 8 could be encouraged

Exercise 2 page 65
1 being woken up 2 to be reported 3 to be told
4 to be cured 5 to be met 6 to be prevented
7 (to) being amazed 8 to be known

Exercise 3 page 65
1 It is known that too much sugar is bad for us. Too much sugar is known to be bad for us.
2 It is estimated that a third of babies born in the UK in 2013 have a life expectancy of 100. A third of babies born in the UK in 2013 are estimated to have a life expectancy of 100.
3 It is said that vitamin C is good for colds. Vitamin C is said to be good for colds.
4 It was once thought that carrots were good for your eyesight. Carrots were once thought to be good for your eyesight.
5 It is believed that the ancient Egyptians were great doctors. The ancient Egyptians are believed to have been great doctors.
6 It is said that the actor put on ten kilos for this film. The actor is said to have put on ten kilos for this film.

Exercise 4 page 65
1 being 2 It 3 been 4 have 5 is 6 be

6E Word Skills

Compound adjectives

Exercise 1 page 66
1 e 2 b 3 g 4 h 5 c 6 a 7 d 8 f

Exercise 2 page 66
1 breath 2 old 3 mouth 4 thought 5 high
6 time 7 second

Exercise 3 page 66
1 well written 2 good-looking 3 well-known
4 English-speaking 5 densely populated
6 mind-blowing 7 bleary-eyed

Exercise 4 page 66
1 b 2 a 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b

Exercise 5 page 66
(Possible answers)
1 who can't see well 2 whose body temperature is affected by the temperature of the air / water 3 made at the latest possible time 4 which is known by people all over the world 5 who has good behaviour 6 whose origins go back a very long time 7 who doesn't judge other people

6F Reading

Future food

Exercise 1 page 67
1 diet 2 amounts 3 slice 4 portion 5 leftovers
6 menu 7 flavours 8 dishes

Exercise 2 page 67
1 the current obesity epidemic; financial, nutritional and ecological reasons
2 Universities hold insect fairs and more market stalls and restaurants are offering insect meals. Furthermore, specialist blogs like Daniella Martin's are promoting the eating of insects.

Exercise 3 page 67
1 E 2 A 3 B 4 D

6G Speaking

Role-play

Exercise 1 page 68
1 h 2 a 3 d 4 b 5 f 6 c 7 e 8 g

Exercise 2 page 68
1 could repeat that? 2 quite catch that. 3 saying that again? 4 mean by ... ? 5 like ...? 6 same as ...?

Exercise 3 2.05 page 68
4, 2

Transcript
Examiner What seems to be the matter?
Candidate Well, I've hurt my foot.
Examiner Let me see. Where exactly does it hurt?
Candidate Right here at the top of my toe.
Examiner Can you stand and put weight on it?
Candidate Not very well. It's quite painful.
Examiner How did this happen?
Candidate I was helping to carry heavy boxes to the garage and I dropped one on my foot.
Examiner Oh dear. Well, it's very swollen and bruised. I think I'm going to send you for an X-ray, just to check that nothing is fractured.
Candidate What do you mean by fractured?
Examiner Broken. There are many small bones in the foot. They can be quite easy to break.
Candidate Oh, I see.
Examiner It's important to keep your weight off the foot in the meantime. Keep your foot up, preferably higher than your body.
Candidate What about a bandage?
Examiner Tight bandages are a good idea. The nurse will show you what to do. Also, put ice on it at regular intervals.
Candidate I'm afraid I didn't quite catch all of that.
Examiner You need to put ice, something cold, over the bruising on your foot. It will help the swelling to go down.
Candidate Oh, I see.
Examiner I'll just request an appointment for an X-ray. The nurse will take you.
Candidate Thank you.
Examiner And if the X-ray is fine, you need to come back in a week's time. Meanwhile, I'll give you a prescription for some anti-inflammatories.
Candidate And how often do I take them?
Examiner Once every four hours for the next three days.
Candidate Thank you, doctor.

Exercise 4 2.05 page 68
The injury foot hurts at the top of the foot, it is swollen and bruised

How the person did it dropped a box on the foot
Treatment keeping foot up, bandaging it, putting ice on it, take some anti-inflammatories
Follow-up visit in a week's time
What the student needed clarification on the meaning of 'fractured'; what to put on his foot to keep the swelling down

Transcript
See exercise 3.

6H Writing

An article

Exercise 1 page 69
1 benefits of PE, teenagers taking regular exercise during exam time 2 how students could incorporate more regular exercise into their lives
It should have 4 paragraphs.

Exercise 2 page 69
Obviously, Consequently, Naturally, Personally, Surely, Interestingly

Exercise 3 page 69
However, Therefore, For example, Moreover, So, Once

Exercise 4 page 69
1 She runs regularly, therefore / so she's very fit.
2 Although he doesn't like exercising much, he still does it. He doesn't like exercising much, although he still does it
3 Exercise increases your muscle strength. Moreover it improves your brain power.
4 He has a lot of fizzy drinks, so / therefore his teeth aren't good.
5 Sweets are unhealthy, whereas fruit is good for you.
6 Since we've been exercising, we've lost weight. / We've lost weight since we've been exercising.

Review Unit 6

Exercise 1 page 70
1 calories 2 pulses 3 Carbohydrates 4 Dairy products 5 preservatives 6 minerals

Exercise 2 page 70
1 play a team sport 2 keep fit
3 convert food into energy 4 push yourself to the limit
5 lift weights 6 beat an opponent
7 be competitive 8 pedal on a bike

Exercise 3 page 70
1 far-fetched 2 thought-provoking 3 bleary-eyed
4 mind-blowing 5 record-breaking 6 mouth-watering

Exercise 4 page 70
1 leftovers 2 flavour 3 slice 4 dish 5 diet
6 portion

Exercise 5 page 70
1 a 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a

Exercise 6 page 71
1 mind 2 like 3 mean 4 catch 5 as 6 repeat

Exercise 7 page 71
1 My mountain bike has been stolen.
2 A new sports centre is being built.
3 The race will be postponed if it rains.
4 Our flight had been cancelled.
5 The swimming pool is going to be closed.
6 The grass is / was cut every week.

Exercise 8 page 71
1 is thought (that) the new coach is a woman / is thought to be a woman
2 is believed (that) the manager resigned last night / is believed to have resigned last night
3 is said (that) the rules are straightforward / are said to be straightforward
4 is reported that some athletes have made a complaint. / are reported to have made a complaint.

Exercise 9 page 71
1 intensity 2 feeling 3 congested 4 single-minded
5 far-reaching 6 infection 7 broken 8 injury 9 fitness

Exam Skills Trainer 3

Exercise 1 page 72
1, 4

Exercise 2 page 72
1 B 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 A

Exercise 3 page 72
Question 5 is related to the main idea of the text

Exercise 4 2.06 page 72
1 C 2 B 3 A 4 D 5 C

Transcript
Presenter Hello and welcome to the programme. Every year about a million people suffer from food poisoning in the UK, which would suggest that we need to be a bit more careful about what we eat. Our food expert, Dr Marilyn Shepherd, is here with us today to give us a few tips on food safety. Marilyn, what seems to be the biggest cause of food poisoning?
Marilyn Well, Rob, it appears to be chicken. There's bacteria in raw chicken that causes more than a quarter of all the cases of food poisoning in the country, so you need to be really careful with it. Raw chicken should always be kept in the fridge, and you should make sure that it's covered and doesn't come into contact with any of the other food in there. After handling raw chicken, you should always wash your hands, knives and chopping boards with soap and hot water.
Presenter Are there any precautions we should take when we're cooking chicken?
Marilyn When you're cooking chicken, you need to make sure that it's done right through to the middle so as to kill all of the bacteria. When you cut into the thickest part of the chicken, there shouldn't be any pink meat, and the juices should be clear, not pink. If you want to be really sure that it's cooked properly, you could buy a meat thermometer. Chicken is supposed to reach 74°C to be safe to eat.
Presenter Thanks for that, Marilyn. So you're saying that chicken has to be cooked thoroughly. How about other meat? Some people like their beef rare, for example.

Marilyn That's right, Rob, and rare beef is perfectly safe, as long as it's well-cooked on the outside to kill the surface bacteria. You see, pieces of beef have a very dense texture that bacteria can't go through, so it's not so important to cook it right through to the middle. You can also eat raw beef, like steak tartare, for example, but this is only safe to eat when the meat has been handled following strict food safety guidelines. As for other kinds of meat, they should all be cooked through to the middle.
Presenter Let's talk about leftover food now, Marilyn. Is it safe to reheat it?
Marilyn Yes, reheating food is fine, as long as you heat it to 74ºC all the way through to kill the bacteria. If you're using a microwave, you should mix the food halfway through to ensure that there aren't any cold spots that still have bacteria. And you have to be extra careful with rice. Rice has a bacteria which produces a toxin that is not destroyed by heat. Reheating the rice kills the bacteria, but it doesn't remove the toxin. To reduce the risk of food poisoning, put cooked rice in the fridge as soon as possible after cooking, and reheat it only once.
Presenter That all makes perfect sense, Marilyn. Thank you for joining us.
Marilyn My pleasure.

Exercise 5 page 73
1 is (fact) 2 were (past tense) 3 been (in progress)
4 be (future) 5 being (after *stop*)

Exercise 6 page 73
1 been 2 few 3 should 4 being 5 Under 6 hand
7 than 8 On

Exercise 7 page 73
1 be the boy's grandfather 2 have just been shopping
3 be having a good time

Exercise 9 page 73
1 Did you know that 2 That's why
3 Can we still feed our brains

Unit 7 Tall stories

7A Vocabulary

Truth and lies

Exercise 1 page 74
1 lie 2 exaggerate 3 manipulate 4 photoshop
5 pass 6 disguise

Exercise 2 page 74
1 cheating 2 fibbing 3 swear 4 fool 5 fabricated
6 misled

Exercise 3 2.07 page 74
1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 b

Transcript
1 **Jessica** Look, Tom, I'm afraid that I'm not going to be able to come to the cinema tonight after all.
Tom Oh dear. Why not?
Jessica I've got to do something at home.
Tom Are you sure, Jessica? This is the second time that you've cancelled a date. If you don't want to go out with me, just tell me. I'll survive!
Jessica But Tom, I do want to go out with you. It's just that ...
Tom Just tell me the truth, Jessica!
Jessica I will, it's just difficult ... You see, it's my parents ... They don't want me to go out with you.
2 **Leo** Are you working on the school newspaper, Grace?
Grace Yes, I'm just adding a photo to my article about our school trip.
Leo But who's that?
Grace It's Molly.
Leo Molly? But that doesn't look anything like her!
Grace Well, I've just improved the photo a little.
Leo A little?! Even her parents wouldn't recognise her! You can't do that! What about the article? Have you been honest about what happened?
Grace Well, I've made it a little bit more interesting, otherwise it would be boring.
Leo You mean you've invented things.
Grace Invented things? I'd never do that, Leo! I've just made things seem a little funnier than they really were.
Leo But the idea of a newspaper is to explain what really happened.
Grace Oh come on, I'm not lying to anyone. I'm just making it a little more entertaining!

Exercise 4 page 74
1 reveal 2 lied 3 makes 4 owned-up 5 distorted

Exercise 5 page 74
1 biased 2 hypocritical 3 manipulative 4 direct
5 ethical 6 honest

Exercise 6 page 74
1 straight 2 devious 3 fake 4 trustworthy
5 truthful 6 hypocritical

7B Grammar

Reported speech

Exercise 1 page 75
1 must take these tablets twice a day.
2 (that) he was going to the gym the next day.
3 didn't have to wait for her.
4 (that) he had taken his final exam the day before.
5 (that) he hadn't told me the complete truth.
6 (that) he'll meet me later today.
7 (that) she prefers this café to the one opposite.
8 (that) she would always remember meeting me.

Exercise 2 page 75
1 what time the game started 2 he would like to try
3 if I had finished 4 which film she had seen
5 me why I had 6 he was going to 7 he could help us

Exercise 3 page 75
1 My mum asked me why I was home so late.
2 ... if I had left school on time that day.
3 ... if I had (got) lots of homework to do.
4 ... when I was going to tidy my room.
5 ... if I had seen my brother that afternoon.
6 ... if I'd help her with the shopping the next day.
7 ... if I'd like her to give me some money for a pizza.

Exercise 4 page 75

Dan asked Zoe if she was going to the concert the next evening. Zoe said she wasn't. She said she didn't have any money. Dan said he'd lend her some. He asked her how much she needed. Zoe said that was really kind of him, but she had to finish her homework too. Dan asked her if she'd like him to help her finish it. Zoe asked him if he spoke German. Dan said he didn't. He asked her if her cousin did. Zoe said she did. She said perhaps she should ask her.

Exercise 5 page 75

1 Sally asked me if I knew the answer to the / those questions.
2 Bella said that she mustn't be late for the trip the next day.
3 Kostas asked me if I'd heard the band's new album yet.
4 Mark says that he won't be at school next week.
5 Harry asked (me) whether I'd be getting a new phone soon.
6 Andrew tells me that his plane arrives at ten in the morning.

7C Listening

Urban legends

Exercise 1 2.08 page 76

1 a 2 b 3 b 4 a 5 a 6 a 7 a 8 b

Transcript

1 Is that letter for me?
2 No, that's not right. Let me show you.
3 This is my seat.
4 That makes me feel much better.
5 That didn't hurt at all.
6 The film's quite good.
7 He's never on time.
8 This party's brilliant.

Exercise 2 2.08 page 76

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 2.09 page 76

Transcript

See Workbook page 76.

Exercise 5 2.10 page 76

1 a, b 2 b, a 3 a, b 4 b, a 5 b, a 6 a, b

Transcript

See Workbook page 76.

Exercise 6 2.11 page 76

1 b 2 d 3 a 4 b 5 b

Transcript

Max Right, you lot. I have a horror story of my own for you. It won't be as good as Ian's, of course.
Ian Of course it won't, Max! But anyway, let's hear it.
Jill Fantastic! Is it as scary as the first one?
Caro Hope not …
Ian Don't worry, Caro.
Max Are you going to listen or what?
Ian We're all ears …
Caro I hope it isn't true …
Max Shhh, Caro. Well, this story takes place on a cold, stormy night deep in the Irish countryside. John, a student, was by the side of the road, hitch-hiking. The storm was so strong that he could hardly see anything at all. He was desperate. Suddenly, he saw a car coming towards him very slowly …
Ian Oh, it's a bit like my story …
Caro Oh, dear. I don't like this story, either.
Max Shh, Caro! It's nothing like your story, Ian! Can I continue?
Jill Please do. I'm listening, at least …
Max Anyway, John was desperate for shelter so, without thinking about it, he jumped into the car … only to realise that there was nobody behind the wheel … ! Then the car started moving slowly off! The rain was lashing down and the storm was howling. John tried the door handle, but it wouldn't open! He began to panic …
Jill Good grief …
Max The car started to pick up a little speed. Frightened, John peered out of the window and could just make out a bend in the road. He was terrified and thought he was going to die.
Caro Oh no!
Max Shh … Then, just before the car hit the trees on the curve, a ghostly hand appeared through the window and turned the wheel. John was frozen with fear.
Ian Is it a ghost story … ?
Max The car was gathering speed now down the hill through the furious storm. John clung on in terror … Finally, he could make out a light in the distance. People! Gathering all his strength he pushed the car door open, fell out into the night, and ran for his life towards the lights of the pub on the roadside.
Caro Phew … Thank goodness for that …
Max Shhh … Soaking wet and exhausted, John staggered into the pub, dazed and shaking, and started telling the few people there about the terrible experience he'd just had.
Jill I bet.
Max Suddenly, the pub doors burst open again …
Caro Oh no …
Max Two men came into the room … like John, they were wet to the skin and out of breath … They looked around the room, and spotted John crying in the corner. One man said to the other …
All What?
Max He said, 'Look, there's that idiot that got into the car while we were pushing it!'
Ian Brilliant, Max! That's hilarious. You had us on the edge of our seats, thinking something horrible was going to happen.
Jill Yes, very clever!
Caro Now, I do like that story! What a relief!
Max Always happy to entertain … Well, there are plenty of funny urban legends as well as the horror ones.
Ian True. And it was better than my story!
Max Nah, mate. Anyway, Caro, you make a good listener. You believe anything anybody tells you!
Caro That's not fair! Well, actually, you may have a point there, Max. I can't help it if I'm naturally trusting, can I?
Jill It just means you're a very nice person, Caro. Much nicer than Max.
Max Hey! But Jill's right. You are nicer than me, Caro. Come on, you lot. I'll buy you all a coffee.
Ian Well, that's unexpectedly nice of you, Max! Let's go, guys, before he changes his mind!

7D Grammar

Reporting verbs

Exercise 1 page 77

1 Ian denied that he had / insisted that he hadn't left the door open.
2 George insisted / argued that it would be dangerous to go out in that weather.
3 Molly complained that the traffic was so loud that she couldn't hear herself think.
4 Mike announced that he'd decided to dye his hair orange.
5 Laura promised (me) that she wouldn't tell anyone my secret.
6 Jackie argued / insisted that it couldn't be her bag because it was the wrong colour.
7 Fred admitted that it had been him who had taken the money.

Exercise 2 2.12 page 77

a 1 b 2 c 4 d 3 e 5 f 6 g 8 h 7

Transcript

1 The weather's too hot for me. I can't stand it!
2 Yes, you're right. It is a bit too hot, actually.
3 I know I've got that appointment but I won't be late, I guarantee you!
4 I have an appointment so I may be a little late, I'm afraid.
5 I feel fine. There's nothing wrong with me, honestly!
6 I really feel unwell. I'm far too ill to come in today.
7 Yes, the price is a bit too high, isn't it?
8 How much? That's ridiculous! That's a lot more than I'm prepared to pay.

Exercise 3 page 77

1 They invited us to join them for lunch.
2 He denied helping the thieves to escape.
3 She insisted on giving me a lift into town.
4 Jo suggested that we should have a picnic.
5 Ned blamed me for losing our tickets.
6 She promised to lend me that DVD tomorrow.
7 The doctor advised him not to go running.
8 Nina admitted that she didn't know the answer.

Exercise 4 page 77

1 begged him not to tell 2 suggested meeting him 3 reminded me not to forget 4 recommended that we (should) try 5 accused Jon of cheating 6 apologised for not remembering

Exercise 5 page 77

1 about coming 2 to use 3 for spending 4 (that) he turn down 5 not to stay 6 to selling 7 (that) we find 8 on giving

Exercise 6 page 77

Greg apologised to Katya for not going to her barbecue the day before. Katya admitted (to Greg) that she'd been quite upset about it. Greg insisted / argued that it hadn't been his fault. Katya refused to listen to any more of his / Greg's lies. Greg explained that he hadn't been able to go because he'd broken his wrist and had had to go to hospital. Katya suggested that he go / went over that afternoon. Greg promised that he'd definitely be there that time. Katya reminded him to take her birthday present with him.

7E Word Skills

Nouns and dependent prepositions

Exercise 1 page 78

1 f 2 a 3 d 4 g 5 e 6 b 7 c

Exercise 2 page 78

1 interest 2 belief 3 evidence 4 obsession 5 increase 6 reason 7 difference 8 need

Exercise 3 page 78

1 in 2 for

Exercise 4 page 78

1 of 2 for 3 in 4 in 5 in 6 of

Exercise 5 page 78

1 No one expected the band to rise <u>to</u> fame so quickly. 2 ✓ 3 Bill and his girlfriend have had a difference <u>of</u> opinion and aren't speaking. 4 You look very pale – is something the matter <u>with</u> you? 5 ✓ 6 There's no point <u>in</u> getting upset about it.

7F Reading

Media wars

Exercise 1 page 79

1 taken in 2 set up 3 plays on 4 let on 5 found out 6 zoomed in on 7 made out 8 holed up

Exercise 2 page 79

That the media can invent stories and maintain them for a long time.

Exercise 3 page 79

1 b 2 a 3 d 4 c 5 d

7G Speaking

Presentation

Exercise 1 page 80

a, b

Exercise 2 2.13 page 80

car crime, credit cars, email scams, mobile phones

Transcript

Email scams are a good example of people using technology to commit crime. The kind of thing I'm talking about is an email saying you've won millions in a lottery. Of course, they just want your bank details!
Car manufacturers use technology to combat theft. So, for instance, cars are much harder to steal these days. Car keys are very high-tech. But if you understand the technology, stealing cars is actually easier. In other words, criminals can use their knowledge of technology to commit crimes.
Surveillance cameras help to reduce crime, even if they aren't recording. What I mean by that is: people don't commit crimes if there are cameras about. However, criminals can always find somewhere without cameras.

Or to put it another way, crime doesn't stop, it just moves to another area.
Some high-tech items have a positive and a negative effect on crime. One example of that would be the mobile phone. They often get stolen, but on the other hand, they can be used to video important evidence or call for help.

Exercise 3 page 80
a that b instance c What d kind e words f way

Exercise 4 2.13 page 80
1 d 2 b 3 e 4 c 5 f 6 a

Transcript
See exercise 2.

7H Writing

A story

Exercise 1 page 81
1 b 2 f 3 d 4 c

Exercise 2 page 81
1 C 2 D 3 A 4 B

Exercise 4 page 81
1 What I wanted was to be honest with them.
2 What hurt my feelings were her opinions.
3 What worried her was the possibility of failing the exam.
4 What we needed was more time.
5 What I really wanted was to take the exam again.

Review Unit 7

Exercise 1 page 82
1 make 2 exaggerate 3 swear 4 cheat 5 fool
6 photoshop 7 disguise 8 Tell

Exercise 2 page 82
1 truthful 2 trustworthy 3 biased 4 ethical
5 manipulative 6 hypocritical

Exercise 3 page 82
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 a

Exercise 4 page 82
1 play on 2 find out 3 zoom in 4 make out
5 taken in 6 let on

Exercise 5 page 82
1 (that) she would never wear that outfit again
2 (that) he didn't believe her
3 (that) she's been talking to Frank
4 (that) I mustn't tell anyone
5 (that) she would give him an answer the next day
6 (that) she had been at a friend's house the day before

Exercise 6 page 83
1 if / whether I had seen the football match the day before.
2 if / whether he had ordered the pizzas
3 what languages I spoke
4 if / whether I was going out later
5 if / whether I liked Indian food and I said I did
6 where her brother worked
7 if / whether she had been late for school that morning
8 if / whether he was tired and he said that he wasn't

Exercise 7 page 83
1 paying 2 winning 3 not to tell 4 to help
5 not sending 6 to join 7 ordering 8 not to play

Exercise 8 page 83
1 admitted (to) taking 2 pass the essay off as
3 lied to his mother about 4 reasons for opposing
5 interest in reading 6 offered to accompany
7 reminded me to pack 8 blaming me for breaking
9 apologised for forgetting 10 deny vandalising / deny that they had vandalised

Unit 8 Change the world

8A Vocabulary

Protest

Exercise 1 page 84
1 f 2 g 3 a 4 c 5 d 6 b 7e

Exercise 2 2.14 page 84
global warming, globalisation, homelessness, unemployment

Transcript
Emily Hi, Ewan!
Ewan Hi, Emily. What are you doing this weekend?
Emily I'm going to a meeting. The students' organisation that I'm in is holding it.
Ewan And what's it about?
Emily Quite a few things. We're planning to organise a protest march about the lack of job opportunities and working conditions for young people.
Ewan It sounds interesting, but isn't it a bit of a waste of time?
Emily What do you mean?
Ewan Well, don't get me wrong, Emily. I mean, I walked through the streets of London against climate change, but afterwards I just thought, what difference does it make? The people in power don't listen to us.
Emily I don't agree at all! Protest does work! We collected over 10,000 signatures about the council's plans to build a shopping centre on the park, and they changed it.
Ewan OK, maybe it works at local level, but I don't think a few thousand young people protesting is going to make the government change its economic policies. And anyway, the world is interconnected today and it's multinational companies, not the government, who often make the important decisions that affect people's jobs, and they won't listen to you.
Emily They might listen if we get people to stop buying their products.
Ewan Perhaps, but how many people do you think will do that?
Emily So what should we do? Just watch people lose their jobs and their homes and then end up on the streets? It's difficult, I agree, but I think we have to show our disagreement with things we think are wrong! And it's good that the people in power know that we are watching them!

Exercise 3 2.14 page 84
1 F 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 T

Transcript
See exercise 2.

Exercise 4 page 84
1 homelessness 2 terrorism 3 disease 4 corruption
5 unemployment 6 global warming

Exercise 5 page 84
1 censorship 2 immigration 3 racism 4 famine
5 nuclear weapons 6 gender inequality

Exercise 6 page 84
1 campaign 2 support 3 voted 4 stand
5 organise 6 sending

8B Grammar

Second and third conditional

Exercise 1 page 85
1 He could save money if he didn't buy so many clothes.
2 ✓ 3 ✓ 4 ✓
5 She could go to university if she studied harder.
6 If they weren't so tired, they'd come out with us later.
7 Pat would learn to play the guitar if he had more time.

Exercise 2 page 85
1 have gone 2 have lent 3 not have remembered
4 had seen 5 have helped 6 hadn't left 7 had fallen
8 have told

Exercise 3 page 85
1 didn't have 2 wouldn't have happened 3 saw
4 wouldn't be 5 would have taken 6 post / posted

Exercise 4 page 85
1 Supposing 2 unless 3 Even if 4 Supposing
5 even if 6 Supposing

Exercise 5 page 85
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 c 6 a

Exercise 6 page 85
1 If she had received the email, she wouldn't have missed the meeting.
2 Even if he begged me to go, I'd still refuse!
3 If I were from Greece, I'd speak Greek.
4 Supposing you were the President, what would you do first?
5 If my computer wasn't broken, I could check my emails.
6 He wouldn't have gone on the demonstration unless he had thought it was really important.

8C Listening

Hashtag activism

Exercise 1 page 86
1 b 2 a 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 b 7 c 8 a

Exercise 2 2.15 page 86

Transcript
See Workbook page 86.

Exercise 3 page 86
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 d 5 f 6 e

Exercise 4 2.16 page 86

Transcript
1 I am not sure who to vote for. Even so, that's no excuse not to do it at all.
2 We couldn't go to London to demonstrate. Still, we managed to protest effectively in other ways.
3 I don't really understand how Twitter works. Nevertheless, I will try to use it.
4 My sister went on a protest march at the weekend. Talking of protests, did you sign that petition about equal rights?
5 Scientists say it will be difficult to reverse global warming. All the same, it would be better to try to do something about it.
6 Journalists are sometimes difficult to trust. By the way, did you know that Matt is studying journalism at university?

Exercise 5 2.17 page 86
1 C 2 B 3 E 4 A

Transcript
1 Talking of politics, I was fed up with the lack of political education at my school, especially with the general election coming up, so I decided I would try to do something about it. I went to the head teacher and asked if I could stage a mock election in the school. I thought I would have trouble persuading him, but he was all for it. So I invited students to put themselves forward as candidates, then organised a speech day and a polling day, and guess what? The turnout was 85%! Students went home and researched the different political parties in our electoral system and what they stood for. I was delighted!
2 Did you know that in the last general election, turnout among 18–24-year-olds was poor – only 43%? Teenagers are accused of being politically apathetic, but that isn't altogether true. For instance, in Scotland, 16- and 17-year-olds were allowed to vote for the first time in the Scottish referendum – you know, when the Scots were voting whether to be independent from Britain. And what was interesting was that young people were inspired and galvanised to think about politics and the future of Scotland – and the voting turnout among the young was incredibly high – 80%! So it just goes to show that when teenagers are included in the political system, they can act responsibly and go to the polling station.
3 As a journalist I can say that that hashtag activism is here to stay. In the past few years, a solid Twitter presence has become essential for any good protest movement. For instance, a hashtag slogan links all posts together into a debating forum, so that people can easily find and join in the discussions. Incidentally, for those of us who work in the media, news is more and more often made on Twitter than through official channels. So I don't think it makes sense to distinguish between online and offline activism any more. Social media is not a substitute for actual demonstrations, but a complement to them. Demonstrations are organised on Facebook. Then people go on protest marches with hashtag slogans on their banners. Therefore other people can see them, go online and join the protest. Digital and traditional activism feed into one another. That's real life today.

4 A rather interesting reaction happened with teenagers a while ago in the States. Thousands of teens wanting to make a point against the perfect bodies found in magazines started posting photos and videos of themselves with acne, body fat, etc. They used the hashtag 'Don't Judge Challenge'. You know, the hashtag was used over two million times! However, some teenagers then started making themselves intentionally unattractive. For instance, they painted on spots, big eyebrows, big glasses or missing teeth and took photos, then slowly changed themselves to show that they were attractive after all. Then a backlash started, with thousands of other teenagers criticising it on Twitter, saying that the videos didn't empower teenagers, but gave the message that people who naturally have bad skin, wear glasses, or that sort of thing can never be attractive. So then a new hashtag was formed called 'Beauty In All Challenge', encouraging people to embrace their individual, personal beauty.

8D Grammar

Mixed conditionals

Exercise 1 page 87

1 you'd listened, you'd know the answer
2 it weren't raining, I'd have walked
3 Lucas / he were older, he / Lucas could have voted
4 I was hungry, I'd have eaten those chips
5 they'd scored, they might be the champions
6 I were you, I wouldn't have done that

Exercise 2 page 87

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 a 5 a 6 c 7 b

Exercise 3 page 87

1 I had never met 2 he wouldn't be exhausted 3 if they had studied harder 4 You would be poor if 5 she wouldn't be burned now 6 I had known your address

Exercise 4 page 87

1 have 2 wasn't / weren't 3 hadn't 4 wouldn't 5 be 6 had

Exercise 5 page 87

1 would have gone 2 wouldn't have 3 hadn't been 4 hadn't developed 5 hadn't recognised / didn't recognise 6 wasn't / weren't

8E Word Skills

Verb patterns

Exercise 1 page 88

1 We'll have a taxi take us to the airport. 2 The teacher made us do our test again. 3 Would you prefer me to call back later / to call me back later? 4 The president was made to stop the war. 5 Did you get someone to fix your bicycle? 6 You'd better have a doctor check that cut. 7 Is Vic's mum making him walk to school?

Exercise 2 page 88

1 looked 2 hidden 3 guessing 4 burning 5 painted 6 thrown 7 working 8 waiting

Exercise 3 page 88

1 to tell 2 floating 3 to buy 4 service 5 served / to be served 6 to help 7 to apologise

Exercise 4 page 88

1 b 2 a 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 a

Exercise 5 page 88

1 silly argument forgotten 2 professional take their photos 3 your bag stolen 4 made to prove his age (by the police) 5 to meet tomorrow evening 6 the man to understand us 7 made her leave the party

8F Reading

The Help

Exercise 1 page 89

1 got ahead 2 squeeze (me) in 3 stepped down 4 set up 5 thinking up 6 helps out

Exercise 2 page 89

1 This is what she has been trying to ask me (for) the past two weeks. 2 Do you think Miss Leefolt is going to agree to that? 3 Doesn't that sound kind of dangerous to you?

Exercise 3 page 89

1 C 2 B 3 C 4 C 5 B 6 A

8G Speaking

Collaborative task

Exercise 1 2.18 page 90

using more renewable energy, using public transport more often, using fewer pesticides and chemical fertilisers

Transcript Examiner I'd like you to imagine that you are discussing practical ways in which people can help to combat pollution. How effective are each of the five suggestions?

Student 1 Shall we start with banning aerosol cans?

Student 2 OK. Personally, I would say that wouldn't be particularly effective, because not many people use aerosol cans these days.

Student 1 Yes, I think you're right. Although they damage the ozone layer in the atmosphere, I don't think banning aerosols would make a huge difference. I'm of the opinion that using more renewable energy is a very effective measure because so much pollution is caused by burning fossil fuels to make electricity.

Student 2 Absolutely. I couldn't agree more. Personally, I'd say that banning cars from city centres is quite effective, but less so than using renewable energy.

Student 1 That's not quite how I see it. I think the air in city centres can get really polluted, especially during the rush hour.

Student 2 Yes, good point, I suppose. I feel quite strongly that using public transport is very important because there would certainly be fewer cars on the road if we all took buses, trams, trains and so on.

Student 1 Yes, I think you're right. We should all use public transport more often. The final measure is using fewer pesticides and chemical fertilisers. What do you think?

Student 2 That would definitely be a good measure, because they get into rivers and streams. Not only that, they can kill other plants and wildlife as well as the pests.
Student 1 I'm with you on that!
Examiner OK, thank you very much.

Exercise 2 page 90

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 g 5 d 6 f 7 e 8 h 9 j
10 i 11 l 12 m 13 n 14 k 15 q 16 o 17 p

Exercise 3 2.18 page 90

1, 4, 6, 7, 8, 11, 12, 13, 17

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 2.19 page 90

banning cars from city centres, using public transport more often

Transcript

Examiner Which are the two easiest measures to put into effect?
Student 1 In my opinion, banning cars from the city centres would be a very quick and easy measure. What's your view on that?
Student 2 And the second easiest would be —
Student 1 Hang on a moment. What's your view on banning cars, first?
Student 2 Oh. Yes, I agree with you. And the second easiest would be using more renewable energy.
Student 1 I take a rather different view on renewable energy. It is very expensive and isn't always reliable because you rely on the wind and the sun. What if the sun doesn't shine much or there isn't much wind?
Student 2 That's a good point. What do you think about banning aerosol cans?
Student 1 I think that would be very easy, although people might not like it! The other measure that would be easy to put into effect would be using public transport more.
Student 2 Yes, I agree. It could be made much cheaper or even free so that people are encouraged to use it.
Student 1 Using fewer pesticides and fertilisers isn't so easy to put into effect, don't you think?
Student 2 Yes, I agree. Until there are alternatives, I think it's impossible to ban them.
Student 1 OK ... We need to come to a decision.
Student 2 Can we agree that banning cars from the city centres is the easiest?
Student 1 Yes, I'm with you on that. And the second easiest is either using public transport more often or banning aerosol cans.
Student 2 Yes. Personally I'd go for using public transport.
Student 1 Me too.
Student 2 That's settled, then.

Exercise 5 page 90

1 agree 2 think 3 Can 4 view 5 What
6 interrupt 7 moment 8 only 9 reach
10 come 11 need 12 settled

Exercise 6 2.19 page 90

3, 4, 5, 7, 10, 12

Transcript

See exercise 4.

8H Writing

A report

Exercise 1 page 91

a 4 (new pedestrian zone, bike lanes, new coach park, increase in parking charges) b 2 (create a new park, more free parking for disabled and elderly people)

Exercise 2 page 91

1 This report is intended to ...
2 It was thought that ... / It was reported that ...
3 It was reported that ... / It was thought that ...
4 On balance, ... / Taking all the points into consideration, ...
5 Taking all the points into consideration, ... / On balance, ...
6 It is recommended that ...

Review Unit 8

Exercise 1 page 92

1 rally 2 protest 3 hold 4 shout 5 listen 6 went

Exercise 2 page 92

1 disease 2 Globalisation 3 corruption
4 homelessness 5 famine 6 censorship

Exercise 3 page 92

1 vote in elections 2 support a campaign
3 write to the council 4 stand outside the building
5 campaign against nuclear power 6 sign a petition

Exercise 4 page 92

1 the speakers to have microphones / it if the speakers had microphones 2 the flyers printed this afternoon
3 me thinking about changing my diet 4 take the photos
5 to re-sit the exam 6 my parents to go to the rally

Exercise 5 page 92

1 a 2 c 3 b 4 a 5 c 6 c

Exercise 6 page 92

1 c 2 e 3 b 4 a 5 d

Exercise 7 page 93

1 would save 2 hadn't missed 3 wouldn't have failed
4 spoke 5 would have lent 6 didn't have

Exercise 8 page 93

1 unless 2 Supposing 3 even if 4 unless 5 Even if

Exercise 9 page 93

1 she wouldn't speak German 2 I would have my own room 3 he had apologised 4 I would have paid for our coffees

Exercise 10 page 93

1 demonstrations 2 democratic 3 racist
4 inequality 5 injustice 6 organisation 7 protesters
8 speeches 9 sympathised 10 successful

Exam Skills Trainer 4

Exercise 1 page 94

A However – contrast B So as not to – purpose C Owing to – reason D As a result – result E Although – contrast

Exercise 2 page 94

1 B 2 E 3 A 4 D

Exercise 3 page 94

rally, C

A concert, B sports match

Exercise 4 2.20 page 94

1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 T 6 F

Transcript

1 **Sarah** What do you think about the new reform, Mike?
Mike I don't agree with it at all.
Sarah I'm not happy about it either. I mean, who has time to do all of that assessment and evaluation at the end of the day?
Mike Exactly. I'd rather be planning what I'm going to do in class the next day than filling out all that paperwork.
Sarah I know. It's going to take ages. Oh well, I don't suppose there's anything we can do about it.
Mike Haven't you heard about the demonstration?
Sarah No ...
Mike There's a demonstration against the new reform next weekend. I'm going and some of our colleagues are going too. You should come.
Sarah I might well do that.

2 The latest typhoon to hit the Philippines has caused more destruction than any of the previous natural disasters the country has faced. Around 16 million people have lost their homes, and more than 6,200 have been killed. Survivors are currently sheltering in partially damaged schools and stadiums waiting for help to arrive. They urgently need medical attention, shelter, food and water. With your help, Doctors without Borders can provide the emergency assistance these people need. Your donations will help us restore medical services, provide shelter and sanitation facilities and offer psychological support to the victims of this catastrophe. The relief operation is already under way, but with your co-operation, we will be able to reach more people sooner. Please give generously.

3 **Interviewer** Hello. I'm here at the Solidarity for Refugees march with Jonathan Robbins, one of the organisers. Jonathan, why do you think this march is necessary?
Protester Basically because of the lack of help being offered to refugees by the government. So far, the UK has welcomed just over 20,000 refugees while other countries have done much more – Germany has accepted over 800,000 and Sweden has offered permanent residence to asylum seekers. I believe that there are many people who would welcome more refugees in the country. In my opinion, British people are no less generous than Germans or Swedes, but we need to prove that to the rest of the world.
Interviewer Thank you Jonathan for that.

Exercise 5 page 94

1 b 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 d

Exercise 6 page 95

1 rights 2 speeches 3 petitions 4 rallies 5 slogans 6 accused 7 revealed 8 misled

Exercise 7 page 95

1 idea 2 work 3 way 4 know

Exercise 10 page 95

1 Besides 2 as well 3 too 4 Furthermore

Unit 9 Consumerism

9A Vocabulary

Shopping

Exercise 1 page 96

1 budget 2 shop around 3 get into debt 4 snap up 5 overcharged 6 knock down

Exercise 2 2.21 page 96

1 B 2 F 3 E 4 A 5 C

Transcript

1 **Ava** Hi Layla, have you bought anything?
Layla No, I haven't bought a thing. I've been in town all day, in all kinds of shops, but I haven't managed to find a dress that I like and everything is so expensive too. I was hoping to find something cheap.
Ava Why don't you wait for the sales?
Layla Yeah, I think I'll have to!

2 **Alfie** What have you been doing?
Lily Planning my InterRail trip around Europe for next summer.
Alfie That sounds fun. Will it be expensive?
Lily Well, I've been online and found the cheapest rail tickets and camp sites that I can. I've also made a list of all my possible expenses – you know, food and things like that – and I think I should be able to pay for everything if I save up the money from my Saturday job.

3 **Jack** Wow, when did you get that new laptop?
Ella Last week.
Jack It must have been expensive.
Ella It was – although I managed to persuade them to give me a 10% discount because I'm a student! I've been planning to buy it for a while and I spent all my savings on it. I want a good laptop for university and this one's got a really good screen and a lot of memory.
Jack Well, it certainly looks good!

4 **Ben** What's the matter, Max?
Max I've splashed out on things that I didn't need and I've had to borrow some money from Lisa to pay for my ticket for next week's concert. Now I'll have to stay in for a few weeks so I can pay her back.
Ben Well, we've got exams soon so you can use the time for revising!

5 **Sam** I see you've been to the sales!
Kate I certainly have! I got a pair of shoes that I really liked at half price! I got to the shop early so I'd get them before anybody else saw them.
Sam Well done!
Kate Although the shop assistant gave me a shock when I went to pay for them. She wanted to charge me full price!
Sam Why?
Kate They'd forgotten to put the sales price into the computer, so there was one price on the shoes and another in the computer. Anyway, they sorted it out and I got a bargain!

Exercise 3 2.21 page 96

1 shopping around 2 afford 3 knock down
4 overspent 5 snapped up

Transcript

See exercise 2.

Exercise 4 page 96

1 debt 2 haggle, down 3 shop 4 pick
5 budget, afford 6 overcharged

Exercise 5 page 96

1 items 2 wish list 3 track 4 notification
5 delivery 6 reviews

Exercise 6 page 96

1 wish list 2 check out 3 notification 4 item
5 basket 6 review 7 delivery 8 track

9B Grammar

Emphasis

Exercise 1 page 97

1 who / that lost his phone yesterday
2 that Ella is getting her hair cut
3 that his grandparents moved to last year
4 2010 that my brother was born
5 motorbike that Nick has been learning to ride
6 Saturday mornings that I have guitar lessons
7 who / that we saw at the club last night
8 that they don't enjoy watching

Exercise 2 page 97

1 this bag is made of, not plastic
2 9 p.m. that the film finishes, not at 8 p.m.
3 Leo who gave me this present, not my sister
4 blue dress that I prefer, not the grey one
5 Porsche that Tom drives, not a Ferrari
6 who's / that's going on holiday to Turkey, not Sam
7 June that school finishes, not July

Exercise 3 page 97

1 this chicken needs is to be cooked a bit longer
2 you need to answer is two of the exam questions / you need to do is answer two of the exam questions
3 Jenny did was (to) return the broken watch to the shop
4 we'll have to buy is some drinks for the barbecue
5 no one can remember is the name of the new café
6 I know about our new neighbours is that they are Swedish
7 you mustn't forget (to do) is (to) turn off the TV before bedtime

Exercise 4 page 97

1 The person who owns that dog is Eva.
2 One thing I can't stand is spiders.
3 A place they've (often) been to (often) is Japan.
4 The singer who she loves most is Adele.
5 The colour Laila doesn't like is green.
6 One food I'll never try is octopus!
7 A sport he'd like to try is snowboarding.

Exercise 5 page 97

1 One 2 it's 3 What 4 the 5 place 6 it's 7 All

Exercise 6 page 97

1 it 2 One/The 3 what 4 One 5 all 6 one

9C Listening

Moneyless living

Exercise 1 page 98

1 O 2 O 3 F 4 F

Exercise 2 page 98

Introducing an opinion as far as I'm concerned, as I see it, I strongly believe, I've a feeling that, in my view, my impression is, personally, to my mind
Introducing a fact actually, in fact, in reality, it's been proved that, it's true that, it's undeniable that, the truth is, undeniably

Exercise 3 2.22 page 98

1 To my mind, O 2 It's undeniable that, F
3 As far as I'm concerned, O 4 I strongly believe, O
5 It's true that, F 6 It's been proved that, F

Transcript

1 To my mind, bank managers get paid too much.
2 It's undeniable that inflation has remained at the same level for six months.
3 As far as I'm concerned, the government's policies to tackle poverty aren't working.
4 I strongly believe it's better to be a saver than a spender.
5 It's true that more Monopoly money is printed every year than real money.
6 It's been proved that the key to happiness is spending money on experiences rather than possessions.

Exercise 4 2.23 page 98

1 a 2 b 3 c

Transcript

1 I can quite understand why people try to live without money today. In my view, it forges a community spirit that we have lost in this technological age. If you help someone with something and they help you with something else, you form a bond with that person. I grew up in a small village in Wales where nobody had any money at all. We lived like all the other families lived – a hand-to-mouth existence, with none of the things – TVs, cars and smartphones – that we consider necessary today. But I was an extremely happy child in a happy family, living in a happy village. Every house was always open to anyone else. Children were looked after by everybody. People grew food and shared it around. And if a family was in trouble, everyone helped out. When I visit these days, everyone seems well-off, with more in the bank, and that's good. However, it has destroyed some of the community feeling because people don't need each other so much now. Instead, people use money to solve their problems and don't ask their neighbours any more.
2 **A** What is couch-surfing? And why do you want to do it, anyway?
B You don't know what couch-surfing is? Personally, I think it's a brilliant idea. You join this website and you can stay with people all over the world for free.
A Really? Why would people do that?
B Who? The people visiting or the people letting them stay?

A Well, both, really! Why would you go and stay with a stranger, and why would you have a stranger stay with you?
B To be nice? People are generally nice, you know. If you look on the website, the hosts are undeniably friendly people who like company and meeting new people.
A Hmm, OK. And they really don't want any money for it?
B No, they do it out of the goodness of their hearts. In fact, the website's strapline is 'Changing the world, one couch at a time.' Isn't that nice?
A No, it isn't. It's a terrible strapline. And a bit of an exaggeration! It's not like couch-surfing is ending global warming or world poverty, is it?

3 **Interviewer** Welcome to *Money Concerns*, the programme that deals with money issues. Today we're looking at moneyless issues, namely the online organisation 'Streetbank'. Our resident economist today is Patrick Barlow. Patrick, can you explain to us what Streetbank is?
Patrick Streetbank was set up by two friends in London as an online community project. It is a website that allows people to offer skills or items to others in their neighbourhood.
Interviewer In their neighbourhood? Do they really need to go online to talk to their neighbours?
Patrick Well, actually, yes they do – especially in places like London where a lot of people live in the same space, but without actually knowing anybody else. As Sam Stephens, one of the co-founders, says, the idea is to 'bring neighbourhoods closer together and make the world a little bit nicer'.
Interviewer That's certainly a splendid ambition. How does it work in reality?
Patrick It's similar to Freecycle, the website where people post things online that they want to give away. But here, people also offer things they can do for other people, like gardening, dog walking, computer lessons, all sorts of things. And more importantly, people can go online to ask a favour – to borrow a vacuum cleaner or a lawnmower, ask for help with moving, anything really.
Interviewer So what's the catch?
Patrick Oh, only a cynical, suspicious person would ask that! In my opinion, there is no catch. It doesn't cost you anything! As the website says, people helping each other saves money and makes the world a better place. Even as an economist, I agree with those principles!

9D Grammar

Participle clauses

Exercise 1 page 99
1 Taken 2 talking 3 Having slept 4 Worn
5 Discovered 6 realising 7 Being

Exercise 2 page 99
1 b 2 c 3 a 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a

Exercise 3 page 99
1 Cooked slowly, this meat will taste delicious.
2 Having passed their exam, the students are celebrating.
3 Feeling lazy, I've decided to have a lie-in.
4 Holding on tight, he climbed up the ladder.
5 There was a breeze blowing through the trees.
6 Born last year, my nephew is very cute.

Exercise 4 page 99
1 Before leaving 2 Since starting 3 After finishing
4 While playing 5 On checking 6 When thinking

Exercise 5 page 99
1 Having 2 Made 3 on 4 Being 5 since 6 giving

9E Word Skills

Money idioms

Exercise 1 page 100
1 rip 2 broke / hard up / poor 3 well 4 hard
5 cheap 6 rolling

Exercise 2 page 100
1 d 2 f 3 b 4 c 5 a 6 g 7 e

Exercise 3 page 100
2, 4, 5

Exercise 4 page 100
1 be dirt cheap 2 Be in the red 3 Make ends meet
4 Be a rip-off 5 Live hand to mouth
6 Tighten your / one's belt

Exercise 5 page 100
1 c 2 d 3 a 4 b

Exercise 6 page 100
1 To have problems with money. 2 To be very expensive. 3 To work for very little money. 4 To be very expensive. 5 To have just enough money to live and not get into debt. 6 To show with actions (not just words) that you believe what you say.

9F Reading

The history of the shopping mall

Exercise 1 page 101
1 jingle 2 logo 3 endorsement 4 brand 5 launch
6 slogan 7 commercial 8 consumer

Exercise 2 page 101
(Possible answers)
The escalators to move shoppers between the floors are at two ends of a mall, forcing people to walk past all the shops on a floor. Glass safety barriers on the first floor allow consumers to easily see the shops above and below them. Open shop fronts, with their big glass windows removed, make it easier for people to enter them. Huge glass ceilings to let in as much natural light as possible and the use of artificial light makes shoppers unaware of the passing of time. Holding different events every week and local festivals in the space inside the mall brings in more people.

Exercise 3 page 101
1 D 2 A 3 F 4 B

9G Speaking

Photo comparison

Exercise 1 2.24 page 102

The student chooses option 1 because it is more casual, and because it is Chinese and his friend Mark likes food from different countries.

Transcript

Examiner These two photos show places where you might go and eat for a treat. I'd like you to compare the photos and say which place would be more suitable for a birthday treat for a friend.

Student Well, these are two very different places to eat out. Let me see … The first one looks like a Chinese buffet – very busy and casual – and the second looks like a more formal restaurant – more sophisticated and expensive. If I had to choose where to take a friend for a birthday treat? Well, for one thing, it would depend which friend. For instance, if I were to take my friend Mark, we'd go to the Chinese restaurant. Not because it's cheaper – although it's probably better value for money – but because it would be more casual. Mark is a very relaxed kind of guy. Another thing is that Mark likes food from different countries. In my view, the elegant restaurant wouldn't be Mark's kind of thing at all. Although he loves good food, he doesn't like formal restaurants. And this one looks very quiet! On top of that, he would hate having to dress up for dinner! For those reasons, I think I would prefer to take Mark to the busy, noisy Chinese restaurant.

Exercise 2 2.24 page 102

3, 4, 6

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 3 2.24 page 102

1 In my view, … 2 For instance, … 3 Not because … but because … 4 Although 5 Let me see …

Transcript

See exercise 1.

Exercise 4 page 102

1 c 2 a 3 b 4 e 5 d

Exercise 5 2.25 page 102

2, 5

Transcript

Examiner In which place would you prefer to eat, and why?

Girl Mmm, that's an interesting question. I'm not sure about that … Let me see … Well, I quite like Chinese food, but I can't say it's my favourite. Looking at the other restaurant, it isn't clear what kind of food they serve, but I like the look of the place. And I like the idea of being served by a waiter rather than helping myself from the buffet. So, thinking about it, I suppose I'd go for B and hope that there'd be something on the menu that I like!

9H Writing

A letter to a newspaper

Exercise 1 page 103

1 She doesn't agree with the article.
2 teenagers gain experience of how to operate in the real world; they learn the value of money; many save the money rather than waste it
3 limit the hours teenagers work and not work on too many school evenings; look for casual jobs which can be turned down; work in the holidays rather than school time

Exercise 2 page 103

1 turn up 2 assumption 3 limit 4 stated that 5 projecting 6 retain 7 turned down 8 suggest 9 operate 10 in response to 11 providing 12 pressing

Review Unit 9

Exercise 1 page 104

1 rip off 2 afford 3 splash out 4 shop around 5 snap up 6 knock down

Exercise 2 page 104

1 wish list 2 checkout 3 basket 4 track 5 items 6 reviews / reviewers

Exercise 3 page 104

1 hard up 2 hand to mouth 3 the lap of luxury 4 through the nose 5 make ends meet 6 in the red

Exercise 4 page 104

1 logo 2 commercial 3 brand 4 launch 5 slogan 6 jingle

Exercise 5 page 104

1 Thinking about it 2 I definitely think 3 For one thing 4 Another thing is 5 On top of that 6 For those reasons 7 I don't have any

Exercise 6 page 104

1 for is a little more consideration 2 (that) I cut my foot on 3 is recycle their waste 4 was (that) the oil tanker hit a rock 5 to do is take your rubbish home with you / to take home is your rubbish

Exercise 7 page 105

1 I'd love to visit is 2 I can't stand is 3 you must go to is 4 I spoke to was 5 I feel sorry for are 6 I avoid buying is

Exercise 8 page 105

1 Being 2 Purchased 3 Standing 4 Having got 5 haggling 6 Sold

Exercise 9 page 105

1 Before buying the jeans 2 Since applying for university 3 Although predicted to succeed 4 On checking the bill

Exercise 10 page 105

1 overcharged 2 rolling 3 notifications 4 arguing 5 tighten 6 consumers 7 delivery 8 Being

Exam Skills Trainer 5

Exercise 1 page 106

The words in bold are mentioned in paragraph C. However this is not the right answer as the question asks about 'typical duties', which are not mentioned here. The typical duties of the job are mentioned in paragraph B: 'My job involves visiting five to ten stores a day and scoring them' and 'eight hours of visits and two hours filing reports'.

Exercise 2 page 106

1 B 2 A 3 C 4 A 5 C 6 B

Exercise 3 page 106

The answer comes at the end of the extract: 'which is what the person who'd listed the phone must have done too'.

Exercise 4 2.26 page 106

1 C 2 E 3 A 4 B

Transcript

1 I snapped up an excellent bargain at my local supermarket once without even meaning to. I'm a big fan of dessert, especially those chocolate puddings that have melted chocolate in the middle. I don't usually buy them, but I was having a dinner party, so I thought I would get some for dessert. When I went shopping, I was delighted to see that they were on offer – two for £4.50 – so I added four to my basket and went to pay. It wasn't until I got home that I realised that the price had been knocked down even further – I'd been charged 31p for each one! I think it was a mistake with the computers or something.

2 I'm really happy with the leather jacket I got last time I visited my grandparents – it isn't actually leather, but it looks like it. Anyway, we were in this enormous superstore together doing some food shopping, and I decided to pop over to the clothes section. When I saw the jackets, I grabbed one to try it on, but it was a bit tight. I tried the next size up and it was perfect! When we got to the checkout, we discovered that there was 25% off all men's clothes that day, so the jacket was only £35. My grandad refused to let me pay for it so I think I did rather well in the end.

3 I think my best bargain was a holiday I went on – to Switzerland – I wasn't prepared to pay through the nose for an expensive hotel, so I thought I'd check out the hostels for a change. In the end, I booked one in a place I'd never heard of for three nights at €25 a night. When I got there, I found myself with my own little wooden house, complete with painted furniture and a balcony. The hostel had a reading room with a bookcase full of books, and a terrace overlooking a lake. All I did was swim, relax and read – it turned out to be one of the best holidays I've ever had.

4 I tend to go to a lot of car boot sales – you know, those sales held in a car park where people sell things they don't want from the back of their cars. Anyway, at this particular sale, there was a couple selling some old china and this lovely old teapot caught my eye. I was about to start negotiating a price when I noticed a tag on the teapot: £1. I decided that the teapot was probably worth a lot more than that, so I bought it before anybody else could. I gave it to my mum because she likes that sort of thing, and she was over the moon about it.

Exercise 5 page 107

1 in- 2 ir- 3 un- 4 dis- 5 im- 6 il-

Exercise 6 page 107

1 cultural 2 insecure 3 overcharged 4 holder 5 underestimate 6 pushy 7 effective 8 disinterested

Exercise 7 page 107

1 look 2 Perhaps 3 as 4 probably 5 like 6 might

Exercise 10 page 107

1 B 2 C 3 A

Cumulative Review 1 (Units 1–1)

Exercise 1 2.27 page 108

1 C 2 E 3 D 4 B

Transcript

1 I had my photo in a German newspaper once. I was thirteen or fourteen and my class was taking part in a school exchange. The school in Germany was in a village called Wendlingen – it's in the south west of the country, near Stuttgart. Anyway, when we landed at the airport, my ears were really hurting after the flight and I just wanted to go somewhere quiet. I suppose I must have realised that someone was taking photos, but I didn't really care at the time. So, it was a bit of a shock to see my photo in the paper the next day. In the photo, I'm shaking hands with my host family and looking extremely uncomfortable.

2 There was a photo of me when I was really little in our local free magazine. I must have been about six at the time, because it was my first day at a new school – we'd just moved house, you see. You can see me standing at the front of the queue in the playground, waiting for the teacher to take us to our classroom. I'm wearing a black and yellow tracksuit and carrying a folder with my name on it. It's a pretty good photograph actually, as it captures the atmosphere of the day: the children wandering around, looking a bit lost, and the teachers walking towards them, wondering what the next year will bring. I'd love to know who took it.

3 I always used to love sports day at school – not because we didn't have any lessons in the afternoon, but because it was the day that I could show everyone that I was good at something. You see, I was the best in my class at running – I was the best in the year, in fact, so I would always win the 100 metre and 200 metre races. The races were fun, but the best part of the day was getting the medals and having my photo taken. I always felt on top of the world during the medals ceremony, and you can see that reflected in the photos. There's one in particular where I look as if I've just won an Olympic Gold!

4 The only time I've had my photo in the newspaper was when I was about eleven. It was the awards ceremony of a programme run by the libraries in my city called the Good Readers Circle. You had to get a thousand points by reading different books – each book was worth six, eight, ten or twelve points, depending on how difficult it was. Anyway, about twelve of us received the award, and after the ceremony, we had our photo taken with the mayor. I was really looking forward to seeing the photo but I couldn't believe my eyes when I opened the newspaper. The only person you could see properly was the mayor, and the rest of us were completely hidden behind him.

Exercise 3 page 108

1 b 2 c 3 b 4 d 5 a

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Exercise 4 page 109
1 c 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 b 9 a 10 a

Cumulative Review 2 (Units 1–3)

Exercise 1 2.28 page 110
1 a 2 c 3 b 4 c 5 b

Transcript

1 **Julia** So, how are we going to get to the festival then?
Paul I could drive, I suppose.
Julia Hmmm. I don't really see the point in taking the car. We aren't going to use it while we're there, and we'll probably have to pay for parking.
Paul True. How about going by train?
Julia I'm not sure. I've heard something about a rail strike, so I'd rather not risk it.
Paul What do you suggest, then?
Julia Well, the website says there's a special coach service that takes you right to the festival. Why don't we do that?
Paul Sounds good to me.

2 Autumn is coming, which means the festival season is nearly over. What better way to say goodbye to summer than at Bestival, the best medium-sized festival in the UK? Bestival is on for three days during the second weekend of September and there's live music from 11 a.m. to 5 a.m. For those attending all weekend, the campsite's open from midday on Thursday to Monday at 4 p.m. This year's line-up is the best ever, and will include some big surprises. So, get your tickets for Bestival now to hear the greatest bands of the moment – do it early as they're selling out fast!

3 **Interviewer** David, you're a volunteer at the Boardmasters Festival in Cornwall, aren't you? Can you tell us what you do to keep the festival site clean?
Volunteer First of all, we encourage festivalgoers to use bin bags for their rubbish – when they arrive we give them a black bag for general rubbish and a green one for recycled waste.
Interviewer What about water bottles and plastic cups?
Volunteer We've got a stall with reusable bottles that people can buy – fairly cheaply, in fact. With the plastic cups, you get 10p for every cup you take back to the stall – we make quite a difference to the site, actually.

4 The fine weather hasn't lasted at Glastonbury as it's been pouring down with rain this afternoon. Festivalgoers will be glad of their boots tonight as they make their way to the stages to watch the headline acts perform. However, tomorrow will be dry, according to forecasters, and there'll be some sunshine, which will give everyone time to dry out. Unfortunately, heavy rain will hit Worthy Farm once more on Sunday in time for the last day. Once again, we're likely to see mud at Glastonbury, something that has become the trademark of the festival in recent years.

5 **Son** Mum, when are we going on holiday this year?
Mum Uh, the first two weeks of August.
Son Will we be back before the 20th?
Mum Yeeeeeees. Why?
Son Because it's the V Festival that weekend.
Mum The V Festival?
Son Yes. It's a music festival. Tom and Josh are going.
Mum OK. If it lasts all weekend, where are you going to stay?
Son Tom's got a tent.
Mum Right, so you're camping. How much are the tickets?
Son Don't worry – I've already got one.
Mum Well, in that case, I suppose you'd better go, then!

Exercise 3 page 110
1 D 2 A 3 G 4 B 5 F

Exercise 4 page 111
1 c 2 a 3 b 4 b 5 a 6 b 7 a 8 a 9 c 10 c

Cumulative Review 3 (Units 1–5)

Exercise 1 2.29 page 112
1 d 2 b 3 c 4 a 5 c

Transcript

Presenter British author George Eliot once said, 'Animals are such agreeable friends – they ask no questions, they pass no criticisms.' The fact that animals are so agreeable is what makes them such excellent companions for the elderly. Today, dogs are increasingly being used as therapy animals, especially in the treatment of Alzheimer's disease. Freya Wilcox is here to tell us how the therapy works. Freya, can you start by telling us a bit about Alzheimer's?
Freya Yes, well, Alzheimer's disease prevents the brain from working properly and leads to serious memory loss. When patients realise they are forgetting things, they can get quite anxious. Not only does depression set in, but they also start to avoid interacting with other people. Alzheimer's patients can get very lonely and isolated, and they end up needing a lot of help. This is where the therapy dogs come in as they are an excellent source of social support.
Presenter It sounds like a great idea. What usually happens when the therapy dogs are with the patients?
Freya The dogs are so happy and so friendly that the atmosphere brightens up as soon as they arrive. The patients feel accepted by the dogs, despite their limitations, so they tend to interact more, even if it's only with the animals. The presence of the dogs often encourages them to do some kind of physical activity, such as taking one of the animals for a short walk or maybe just brushing one of them. Research shows that some Alzheimer's patients even eat more after being with the dogs. It's really quite remarkable what these animals can do.
Presenter That's incredible! Freya, can any kind of dog be used for therapy?
Freya No, not all dogs are suitable for the job; it depends on their temperament. The ideal animal is friendly, comfortable with strangers and not easily alarmed. Therapy dogs require a lot of training too. They must be able to sit, stay, perform tricks on command, and resist distractions such as other dogs or attractive smells. We have to make sure we have the right dogs or the therapy won't work.
Presenter Where do the therapy dogs live, Freya? Surely not with the patients?
Freya No, they live with their trainers. Just like the doctors and nurses who treat the Alzheimer's patients, the dogs need some time off, so they go home at night for a break. Also, they need to be bathed and looked after properly so that they don't pass on any infections to the people they're supposed to be helping. Therapy dogs are kept to a very high standard, so that only good things come out of the treatment.
Presenter Freya Wilcox, thank you for joining us.
Freya My pleasure.

Exercise 3 page 112
1 C 2 C 3 B 4 A 5 B 6 A

Exercise 4 page 113
1 a 2 b 3 c 4 c 5 a 6 b 7 b 8 a 9 a 10 c

Cumulative Review 4 (Units 1–7)

Exercise 1 2.30 page 114
1 T 2 F 3 F 4 T 5 F 6 T 7 F 8 T

Transcript

Presenter Hello and welcome to the programme. Today we're going to look at a kind of financial fraud known as a Ponzi scheme. Trudy Metcalf is here to tell us how it works. Trudy?

Trudy Hello. Yes, a Ponzi scheme is run by a dishonest person who sets up a fake business and convinces people to invest money in it. The investors get money back on their investments, which makes the business look successful. So, another group of investors comes along. Their money is used to cover the money that was paid to the first group. When a third group comes to invest, their money is used to pay the second group, and so it continues.

Presenter Thanks for that, Trudy. So, where did the Ponzi scheme get its name?

Trudy It's named after an Italian migrant called Charles Ponzi – he wasn't the first person to do something like this, but his scheme was certainly one of the biggest. Ponzi arrived in the USA in 1903, but it wasn't until 1919 that he set up his scheme. Before that, he had already been to prison twice: the first time in Canada for forging a cheque, and the second in the USA for helping to smuggle Italian immigrants across the border.

Presenter Tell us about Ponzi's scheme, Trudy. How did it work?

Trudy It started when Ponzi received a letter from a company in Spain. The letter contained an International Reply Coupon that covered the cost of the stamps he would have to buy to send a reply. Ponzi noticed that the reply coupon cost less in Spain than the stamps would cost in the USA and he realised he could make money out of this. He began sending money to his friends and family in Europe to buy reply coupons which they would send back to him to exchange for stamps. He would then sell the stamps for a profit.

Presenter So when did investors get involved in the scheme?

Trudy Ponzi decided to set up his own company, the Securities Exchange Company, to try and make an even bigger profit. At first, he continued using the reply coupons, which was not actually illegal. Then he ran into trouble because of the quantity of reply coupons he needed to deal with. With investors still queuing outside his door, Ponzi changed his strategy. He began accepting investments to pay off his earlier investors. This, of course, was completely illegal, but it made him very rich – it's said he could make around $250,000 a day.

Presenter Wow! That's a lot of money. So, what went wrong?

Trudy Eventually, people got suspicious. The Boston Post began to investigate where Ponzi's money was coming from and the investors got nervous. They started asking for their money back, but Ponzi couldn't pay: he owed them millions of dollars he just didn't have. His scheme collapsed, and Ponzi was arrested. He spent fourteen years in prison and then he was deported to Italy. From there, he went to Brazil, where he died penniless in 1949.

Presenter Which just goes to show that it doesn't pay to cheat. Trudy Metcalf, thank you for joining us.

Trudy My pleasure.

Exercise 3 page 114
1 b 2 d 3 c 4 d 5 a

Exercise 4 page 115
1 c 2 b 3 c 4 b 5 a 6 c 7 a 8 c 9 a 10 b

Cumulative Review 5 (Units 1–9)

Exercise 1 2.31 page 116
1 B 2 D 3 A 4 E

Transcript

1 I love the commercials Sony made to advertise the Bravia television – they did quite a few of them at the time. My favourite one is the paint one, because it's so colourful. The advert starts with a shot of an old tower block in a fairly bleak-looking housing estate. During the advert, the tower block gets painted, but not in the way you might expect. What they do is to have the paint exploding like fireworks, so that there are big splashes of colour all over the screen. The explosions are timed to coincide with the music, which is a stirring classical piece – it's really well done. The only person in the ad is a clown, but I'm not really sure what he's there for.

2 My favourite ad is the Darth Vader one – do you know the one I mean? This little boy is dressed up as Darth Vader from Star Wars, and he goes around his house trying to make things move. First he tries his mother's exercise bike, but that doesn't work, so he tries the dog, the washing machine and even a doll in his sister's room, all without success. Then his dad arrives home in his VW Passat and the boy tries his luck with the car. To his delight, he manages to start the car. Of course, it's his dad who has done this from the kitchen with the remote control, but the boy doesn't know that. I just love the way he jumps back in surprise when the headlights come on.

3 I think one of the best adverts I've ever seen is the one for the game *Clash of Clans*. It features the actor Liam Neeson and he's in a café, waiting for some doughnuts and playing the game. When he loses, he starts threatening his virtual opponent like he does in one of his films – *Taken*, I think it's called. In the film, Liam Neeson's daughter is kidnapped and at one point, he's talking to the kidnapper on the phone: 'I will find you and I will kill you,' he says. Anyway, in the ad, he uses similar words spoken with the same kind of voice – it's really quite scary. The server in the café thinks so, anyway, especially when Liam corrects him for getting his name wrong.

4 This one's an advert for my favourite chocolate: Terry's Chocolate Orange. I don't know if you've ever seen one of these, but it's a big orange made out of pieces of chocolate and you have to hit it to make the pieces come apart. Anyway, back to the advert. It starts in an office, and one of the employees breaks the chocolate orange open with her phone. Next we see a man breaking an orange with one of his wife's new shoes, and a little boy opening one with a toy hammer. Then we see a boyfriend and girlfriend sitting on the sofa waiting for the girl's mother to bring in the tea. Just as she opens the door with the tray, the boy tries to break open his chocolate orange on the table, but the table is made of glass and he breaks it. You really feel for him in that moment.

Exercise 3 page 116
1 C 2 G 3 D 4 A 5 E

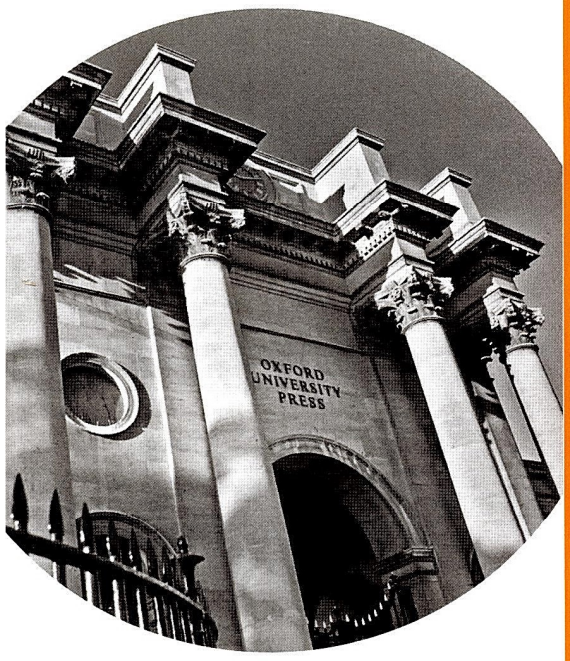
Exercise 4 page 117
1 b 2 a 3 a 4 c 5 c 6 a 7 c 8 b 9 c 10 b

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



OXFORD
UNIVERSITY PRESS

irlanguage

www.oup.com/elt

Third Edition
Solutions

Leading the way to success

With 100% new content, the third edition of Oxford's best-selling Secondary course offers the tried and trusted Solutions methodology alongside fresh material that will spark your students' interest and drive them to succeed.

MOTIVATE • ACTIVATE • ACHIEVE

Create inspiring and motivating lessons with the Solutions Third Edition Teacher's Pack.

- **Teacher's Book**
- **Teacher's Resource Disk**
  - Photocopiable Communicative Activities
  - DVD Worksheets with extension activities and teaching notes
  - Teacher's Guide with full teaching notes
  - Twenty-first Century Skills Projects
  - Course Test Audio
- **Workbook Audio CD**

Teacher's Website:
www.oup.com/elt/teacher/solutions